Stephanecic series Together to a bright future

CONNECT PLUS 6 First Term





Content

Revision on (Connect Plus 5)	3
Unit (1) Express yourself!	. 14
Unit (1) Test (1)	61
Unit (2) Home is where the heart is	64
Unit (2) Test (2)	110
Unit (3) School time!	113
Unit (3) Test (3)	161
Unit (4) We can make a difference!	164
Unit (4) Test (4)	203

Hassan Fathy: A biography
The Fiction Reader:

A wonderful surprise

219

205

Part

General Revision on Connect Plus (5)

Revision on Structures

تمان الماضي البسيط The Past Simple Tense



زمن المضارع التام، The Present Perfect Tense



Connect Plus 6 -



Revision

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. We (have has are) eaten dinner.
- 2. (Did Have Has) she make a cake?
- 3. Mom (has have is) already cooked the food.
- 4. My sister (have make has made make) us delicious food.
 - 5. (Have Has Do) you finished your work?
 - 6. He hasn't (seen saw see) his grandfather for months.
 - 7. Nour (have has is) cooked pasta and meatballs.
 - 8. My friend Omar (played have played playing) for a football club last year.
 - 9. Did Ali (clean cleaning cleaned) his room?
 - 10. (Have Has Did) Sara do her homework last night?
 - 11. Ahmed didn't (go went gone) to school yesterday.
 - 12. Has Amir (ever just since) gone to Alexandria?
 - 13. We (didn't aren't haven't) watch the match yesterday.
 - 14. Have you (ever never yet) seen an elephant?
 - 15. We have (start started starts) our new game.
 - 16. They (starts started has started) their class two hours ago.
 - 17. I (go went have gone) to bed at ten last night.
 - 18. They (haven't hasn't didn't) painted the pictures yet,
 - 19. They (eaten ate have eaten) their lunch an hour ago.
 - 20. Sara and Ahmed (have has are) listened carefully to their teacher.

Complete with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

- 1. What has he(do) in the classroom?
- 2. What did you (do) last week?
- 3. Have you ever (travel) abroad?
- 4. He has just (go) out.
- 5. We (visit) our grandparents last Friday.
- 6. Ali has (make) a big mistake.
- 7. I (not see) the accident yesterday.
- 8. They have already (eat) fish for lunch.
- 9.1 (buy) a new mobile last month.
- 10. She has (give) me a present.

प्रताम 1

→ Step Ahead



who- which -where

Who

الذي- التي- ال**ذين- اللائي**

الذي- التي- ال<mark>ذين- اللائي</mark>

used for peopleused for things

Which Where

حيث

bb used for places

- This is the man who bought the villa.
- Did you see the car which my father bought?
- Cairo is the city where my cousins live.

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Do you remember my uncle Adei (who -where -which) lives in Alexandria?
- 2. This is an elephant (who where which) lives in African forests.
- 3. I have another aunt (who -which -where) lives in New York.
- 4. These are the boys (who which where) won the match.
- 5. This is a medicine (who where which) is good for ill people.
- 6. July is a month (which where who) is often hot.
- 7. This is Sara (who where which) lives in Aswan.
- 8. This is the Egyptian desert, (who which where) lizards and other animals live.
- This is my sister (where which who) is very good at tennis.
- 10. Do you know the village (where who which) my grandparents live?
- 11. Heba is a girl (who where which) wants to be a doctor.
- 12. A wadi is an ecosystem (where which who) is normally dry.

f Conditionals

The Zero Conditional (If)

If + present simple

present simple

مضارع بسيط + 🖊



مضارع بسيط

If you boil water, it turns into steam.

Connect Plus 6 -

5

Revision

The First Conditional (If)

If + present simple

future simple / (or imperative)

مظارع بسيط + ال

(أو صيغة الأمر) /المصدر + (will ('Il – won't) |

If you study hard, you 'll get high marks.

The Second Conditional (If)

If + past simple

would ('d) + stem verb

المصدر + (d) + المصدر

ماضي بسيط + ا

If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. If Ali (go goes will go) to Cairo, he'll see the Pyramids.
- 2. They (will won't would) find their way home if they had a map.
- 3. They (will won't wouldn't get home early if they find a taxi.
- 4. He (can will would) live on a farm if he were a farmer.
- 5. If I met a famous person, I would (take takes took) a photo with him.
- 6. He would be lazy if he (eat ate eats) too much.
- 7. He'd (drive drove drives) a tractor if he were a farmer.
- 8. If he (will be would be was) a pilot, he'd travel abroad.
- 9. If we (go would go went) to bed early, we'll get up early.
- 10. If she doesn't eat healthy food, she (won't- wouldn't- isn't) be strong.
- 11. Salma (buys bought-would buy) a car if she had lots of money.
- 12. If Omar (wins won would win) a prize, he'd be happy.
- 13. How would she feel if she (see saw seen) a lion?
- 14. You (will-won't-wouldn't) cause pollution if you go everywhere by car.
- 15. If I drink coffee before going to bed, I (would sleep-don't sleep - sleeps) well.
- 16. If I (have had having) a horse, I'd ride it every day.
- 17. If you sleep well, you (felt- feel- are feeling) fresh during the day.
- 18. If she (eats eat doesn't eat) her breakfast, she will be hungry.
- 19. He will waste water if he (has-have-will have) lots of snowers every day.
- 20. If you get up early, you (will won't would) miss the bus.

(5) Cor	nplete with the corre	ect form o	f the verbs in brack	ets:
1. If I 2. If I 3. If we want to see the second secon	went to Cairo on vacations of the company of the co	a car, I would medal, I won, we(be	uld travel to Alexandria rould be happy. (go) to (be) happy. (rightened)	the zoo.
			تحويل الحملة الخا past simple past continuous would - could	************
	d said, "I'm very tired." imed said that he was v	ery tired.		
o Heba	said to Nahla, "I visit m eba <mark>told</mark> Nahla <mark>that she</mark>	y aunt ever		
	oing my homework," sa hraf said that he was do		mework,	
	t carry the box," Amal s			
6 Cha	nge the following se	ntences i	nto reported speech	1:
	s going to take Omar to			
	shopping with Mom," sa	_		
3. "I'll trav	vel to Aswan next mont	h," said No	ur.	Term 1
Connect Plus	s 6			7



Revision

- 4. "Omnia can speak English well," said Nashwa.
- 5. "Hasan is going to visit his cousins in Tanta," said Magdi.
- 6. "Mr Hosam works in Cairo," said Shady.

Complete the following sentences with the correct verb:

......

- 1. "I go to the club on Sunday," said Ali.
 - Ali said he to the club on Sunday.
- 2. "I can play tennis," said Manar.
 - Manar said she play tennis.
- 3. "I'm going to cook the food," said Laila.
 - Laila said she going to cook the food.
- 4. "I visit my aunt every week," said Tarek.
 - Tarek said he his aunt every week.

السؤال المذيل Question Tag

- ► Amira is very clever, isn't she?
- You haven't cooked the food yet, have you?
- Amgad phoned me yesterday, didn't he?
- ➤ We have dinner at four, don't we?
- ▶ Jana has two blue dresses, doesn't she?

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Ramy has played football, (hasn't doesn't isn't) he?
- 2. Nour is good at English, (hasn't doesn't isn't) she?
- 3. Mom hasn't finished the food yet, (doesn't has haven't) she?



- 4. They weren't at home last night, (were are do) they?
- 5. They always play tennis on Saturday, (don't haven't aren't) they?
- 6. I'll phone you tonight, (won't can't wouldn't) I?
- 7. He can carry this bag, (couldn't could can't) he?
- 6. We played the match last week, (hadn't didn't weren't) we?
- 9. Amr (is was has) ill, wasn't he?
- 10. Heba won't visit us tomorrow, (will can would) she?
- 11. Ali likes swimming, doesn't (she her he)?
- 12. He (get gets got) up late, didn't he?
- 13. Manar (looked looks look) very angry, doesn't she?
- 14. Aya bought a new skirt, didn't (he her she)?
- 15. Maha likes sweets, (hasn't doesn't isn't) she?

Write the question tags of the following sentences:

- 1. Nada didn't have a new dress,?
- 2. It won't rain tomorrow,?
- 3. Your sister goes to school, _____?
- 4. We can't go home early today,?
- 5. Saad plays tennis well,?
- 6. She has a nice blue dress,?
- 7. He went to the club yesterday,?
- 8. You live in Giza,?

(Adjectives) Comparison

Comparative degree:

- l'm younger than my sister.
- Football is more popular than handball.
- Cats are less dangerous than crocodiles.

Superlative degree:

- The lion is the strongest animal.
- Football is the most popular sport.
- This is the least expensive shirt I have.

Connect Plus 6

Revision

Ohoose the correct answer:

- 1. Nour is (tail taller the tallest) than her sister.
- 2. Omar is the (fast faster fastest) boy in the class.
- 3. That's the (more least most) expensive dress in the shop. I don't have enough money to buy it.
- 4. The blue skirt is (the most more the least) beautiful than the black one.
- 5. My father is (the than then) tallest one in the family.
- 6. Who is (old older the oldest) than Gamal?
- 7. Which is (small smaller the smallest) animal in the zoo?
- 8. Which story in the library is (more exciting most exciting the most exciting)?
- 9. The orange tree is (smaller than the smallest smaller) the mango tree.
- 10. Tennis is (less least the least) popular sport in Egypt.
- 11. Which hobby is (more relaxing the least relaxing less relaxing) one?
- 12. Making models is (the least less more) popular activity in our class.
- 13. Playing football is (most more the least) popular than doing creative hobbies.
- 14. Playing cards is (the most less the least) interesting than playing computer games.
- 15. Which sport is (most dangerous least dangerous more dangerous) than climbing mountains?
- 16. Drawing is the (most more least) exciting hobby for me. I love drawing natural views.
- 17. Playing sports is (exciting the most exciting more exciting) than watching it.
- 18. Silver is (less expensive the least expensive the most expensive) than gold.
- 19. Art class is (the least interesting more interesting the most interesting) class. We enjoy it a lot.
- 20. Tennis is (the most the least less) exciting than boxing.

Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

less - more - the least - the most

- 1. Amir thinks that playing football is exciting than swimming. He doesn't like swimming.
- 2. Drawing is popular hobby in our family. We love it!
- 3. Phones are expensive to buy than cars.
- 4. My friends and I don't like cooking. It's popular activity in my class.



everybody - everything

الله أستحدم في الحمل المثبتة أو الاستفهامية (Positive - Questions).

somebody - something

🚨 تُستخدم في الجمل المثبتة (Positive).

anybody - anything

الله عند الحمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية (Negative - Questions).

nobody nothing

- أ لستخدم في الجمل المثبتة لتعطى معنى النفي (Positive).
- Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night.
- I packed up everything for my trip.
- I bought something there last week.
- Can you see anybody in the park?
- ▶ I found nobody there to help me.
- Did you find anything in the fridge?
- ► He called somebody for help.
- ▶ I heard nothing. Would you repeat, please?

Connect Plus 6 (11

Revision



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm thirsty. Is there (anything -everything -nothing) to drink in the fridge?
- 2. There is (everybody somebody nobody) at the door. I think it's your friend.
- 3. Mariam is really kind, so (nobody -anybody -everybody) likes her.
- 4. (Everything Everybody Something) in this store is made from wood.
- 5. There is (nothing everything something) on the table for Omar. It's a present from his mom!
- 6. She knows (anybody anyone somebody) in the club.
- 7. The test was very difficult. Did (nobody anybody somebody) do well in it?
- 8. I didn't buy (something -anything -nothing) last week.
- 9. (Somebody Everybody Nobody) showed me around the Pyramids when I was six.
- 10. (Nobody Everybody Anybody) in my family loves summer vacation. It's fun.
- 11. is (something -everything -nobody) OK?
- 12. There (were -was -are) nothing interesting on TV last night.
- 13. I didn't know (nobody -somebody -anybody) on my first day at school.
- 14. Somebody (am -is -are) at the door. Can anybody open the door?



- ♦ too (صفة too) (adj جدًّا جدًّا (أكثر من اللازم)
 ♦ enough كافي (adj مسفة enough) enough
- Ahmed likes basketball, but he is too short. = He isn't tall to to play it. = He can't play basketball because he is short.
- I want to carry this box, but it's too big. = It isn't small o. o. = I can't carry this box because it's big.
 - ◄ (﴿﴿﴿﴿﴾}) تتبع بصفة و تعطي معنى النفي .
 - ♦ (enough) تأتي قبلها الصفة.



Choose the correct answer:

- She can't tell me what to do. She isn't (enough old too enough old enough).
- 2 Nada is (too two to) short. She can't play basketball.
- This bag is too (heavy heavier heaviest) for you to carry.
- Want to carry this box, but it's (too enough much) big.
- is I'm very sorry. I wasn't (patient enough more patient enough patient) to listen to your advice.
- . The weather was (to- too- enough) cold for me to go out.
- 7 He is old (too- enough- much) to feed himself.
- The tiger is (fast- faster- the fastest) enough to catch a deer.
- . He is clever (too enough very) to get the full mark.
- 1) My Grandma is (too-enough-much) old. She can't run.
- 11. The elephant is (enough strong strong enough strong too) to break the tree.
- He isn't strong (too many enough) to move the desk.
- The car was (to expensive enough expensive too expensive) for him to buy.
- He isn't fast (too much enough) to win the race.

Read and complete with (too or enough):

- 1 Esraa can't play basketball because she is . short.
- 2. The turtle isn't fast to arrive before the rabbit.
- Samy tells Ibrahim he shouldn't jump in the water because he is young.
- 4. The deer isn't strong to fight the lion.
- 5 Ahmed likes basketball, but he isn't tall to play it.



Connect Plus 6-

-



Losson 1 (How crossive mre you)

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



* collage * فن التلصيق (تلصيق أشياء * مدشفة علم لوحة)



junk modeling) تشکیل نماذچ من المهملات (الخردة)



outdoor art ; فن خارجين '



animation رسوم متحرکة .



making jewelry: مناعة المجوهرات



'designing clothes' '، تصميم الملابس (الأزياء):



, **pottery** صناعةالفُخَّار (الخُزَّف)



sculpture فن النحت - تمثال مىحوت '



creative مُبدِع - مُبتَّكِر



competition مافسة - مسابقه



, **lids** - أغطية (عبوات / زجاجات).

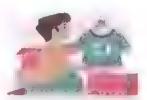


art exhibition مَعرَض مُنب



. خرز

beads



recycled cloth ' 'أقمشة مُعاد تدويرها



clay اصلحال المال



cardboard box علبة من الكارتوں



	The state of the state of	The second secon	military.
city museum	منحف المدينة	wood	خشب
project	مشروع	stone	حجاره أحجار
painting	رُ زسمة - لوحة مبية	shells	قشور - أصداف
poem	فصيده	bowl	وعاء - سلطانیه
rocket	<u>هاروح</u>	vase	مزهري <mark>ة - فا</mark> زة
completely	ىمامًا - بالكا مل - كُليًا	getting you	ır hands messy تبعل يديك مُنسخَش

creativity	إبداع - ابتكار	different ways	طرق مختلفة
design skills	مهارات التصميم	necklace	قلاده - عُمد
computer skills	مهارات الكمبيوتر	bracelet	إسورة
technology	تكنولوجيا	colored (adj)	مُلَوْن
moving pictures	تحريك الصور	shape (n)	شْکُل
outside world	العالم الخارجي	a bit of	قطعة صغيرة من
activities	أنشطة	express yourself	ر <mark>تُعثر عن نفسك</mark>

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أضفل سلاطمت

	The state of the s		7
enter	نِدْخُل - يُدْحِل	entered	entered
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
express	يُعبِّر عن	expressed	expressed
paint	يطلب - يُلَوِّن	painted	painted
discuss	يناقش	discussed	discussed
look	ينظر - يبدو	looked	looked
talk	يتكلص	talked	talked
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
check	يفحص - يتفقَّد	checked	checked
design	يُصمّم	designed	designed

पिटामा १

Lesson

try	يحاول	tried	tried
imagine	يتحيل - يتصور	imagined	imagined
decide	يُقْرُر	decided	decided
save money	يُوَمَّر (يدُض) مال	saved money	saved money
share	يشارك	shared	shared

III) republic travels

			PP
show	يظهِر - يُبدي	showed	shown
send	يُرويىل	sent	sent
get	يحضل على	got	got (gotten)
make	يجعل - يطنع	made	made
build	شنب	built	built
find	771	found	found
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
tell	يُخبر	told	told
understand	രകര്ച	understood	understood
read	يقرأ	read	read
write	يكتب	wrote	written
think .	يفكر	thought	thought
take	ياخذ	took	taken

Did you know?

When you are doing a creative activity, you focus on what you're doing. You don't think about your daily life, or even what time it is! This is often called "being in the zone".

عندما تقوم بنشاط إنداعب، مإنك تركر علم ما تمعله أنت لا تنشغل تحياتك اليومية، ولا حتم تنشغل بالوقت! ويُسمَّم هذا عالنًا "الانهماك (الانشغال الشديد) مُن شميع مقع بالنسبة لك"



The tasson notes

colored - colorful

- colored (adj)
- colorful (adj)

- مُلَوْن (به ألوان غير خالي من الألوان) مُلَوْن (ذو ألوان زاهية وجذابة ومُبهجة)
- ► A collage is made with material, paint, and colored paper.
- Look at these beautiful colorful flowers. They are wonderful.

إلم أي مدي أيب فيدع (مُبتكر)؟ How creative are you?

🗖 لاحظ تركيبة هذا السؤال حيث أن (How) إن أُتبِعَت بصفة فإنها تسأل عن الصفة التي تايها.

- ► How creative are you?
 - ☆ I'm quite creative.

(أنا مبتُكِر إلى حدُّ ما.)

- ► How good are you at English?
- (ما مدى إجادتك للغة الإلجليرية؟)
- ☆I'm very good at English.
- ► How beautiful is this dress?
 - ☆ I think it is not beautiful.

(ما مدى جُمال هذا الفستان؟)



(How many - How much - How tall - How old - How fast - How heavy)

outdoor (adj)

لـ كَلْمَةُ (outdoor) هِي صَفَةُ تَعَنِي خَارِجِ الأَماكِنِ الْمَعَلَقَةُ (فَبِ الهَوَاءِ الطَّلَقِ) وعكسها (indoor) ومعناها داخل مكان مُعَلق.

- ▶ Use leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.
- ▶ Chess (الشطرنج) is an indoor game.

Show your creativity!

Enter our fun new competition • and show us how creative you are!

We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art exhibition • in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

Junk modeling

What can you make with a cardboard box ©? Plastic bottles and lids o? Try junk modeling ©! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

8 صلطال9 مواش معاد بدویرد

🕜 صباءت الغُدُّار

6 مُثْسِدُهُ

🚯 تشكيل نماذج من المُطْمُلاتِ

Pottery

Do you like getting your hands messy o? Then try pottery o! Use clay o to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

🕕 فن انتلصيق

Designing clothes

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth o to save money and help the planet.

Ф مجوهراتأسلور

🐌 تمثال - مندونة

🐧 رسوم متصر کهٔ

را شخل آوادات مشور

Making a collage

If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage with material, paint, and colored paper.

Making jewelry

Use beads to make beautiful jewelry 0, for example, necklaces or bracelets 2. Sculpture

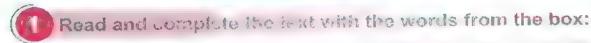
You could use wood, clay, or stone to make a sculpture of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape .

Outdoor art

Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.

Computer animation

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation . Moving pictures can tell a great story! There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself?



beads - cardboard - clay - cloth - computer - leaves

Supply the missing parts in the toilowing dialogue:

Taqwa : Hi, Magda! Have you heard about the creative activities competition?

Magda : Hi, Taqwa! Yes, it's a really great

Taqwa : How old do you have to be to enter the competition?

Magda : They want children between the ages of five and fifteen.

Taqwa : What will happen to the children's artworks?

Magda: They will appear to a big act . in the city museum.

Taqwa : An art exhibition? Which creative activity would you like to try?

Magda : Recycling is important so i would do junk 3

Tagwa: Junk modeling is rice, but I would make some outdoor art.

Magda :

..... do you like making outdoor art?

Taqwa : Because I like collecting shells and making shapes with them.

→ Step Ahead



Read the following text and answer the questions:

There are different competitions from time to time. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how creative children are! They want children between the ages of five and tiffeen to send meir creative works. Their works will appear in a big act exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways children can exhibit the hieroselves. They could send a painting a proto, a promi.

0

Choose the correct answer.

- I. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how (interested excited creative) children are!
- 2. Their works will appear in a fing art exhibition in the city (museum square hall).

Answer these questions:

- 3. How old are the children they want?
- 4. What works could children send?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. a computer could an animation You to make use.
- 2. could use You · or · cardboard plastin bottles in junk modeling.
- 3. You leaves or outdoor art use can shells in.
- 4. a collage make to use you can V r (?

- 5. How about clothes and making own your designing?
- 6. in will art exhibition Your work a big appear.
- 7. recycled cloth can use money You to save.
- 41374000101744514114611888001141100411401411004350141011815141101411
- 8. yourself to express like you do How?

Write an email to your friend Nada:

Tell her how creative you are and the creative activities you can do, such as junk modeling, pottery, designing clothes, or making a collage. Your email address is yasmine@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nada@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:



Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس







uncomfortable غیر مریح - مزعج - غیر مرتاح



relaxing



disappear unai'i,

Prepositions

good at	جید ف <i>ی</i> - ماهر <mark>فی</mark>	go for a walk	لتمشُّب لدها ما نزهه ماشيًا
bad at	<mark>ւ</mark> ս անա	talk about	يتحدث عن
arrive at	يصل إلى	get up	رينهض - بستيقظ

Extra Vocabulary	Like) Stell
	1 1 4 5

tips	نصائح	paint (n)	طلاء دهان
that looks grad	يبدو هدا جيدًا	heckily	لحسن الحط
I feel better	أشعر بتحسَّن	set an alarm	يضبط منبه
right way	طريقة صحيحة	any kind of	أبي .وع من
wrong way	طريقة خطأ	anyway	علم أي حال - علم العموم

Conjugation of setbs

Regular verbs achiic disch

Present	1		
paint	يطلى - يُلَوْن	painted	painted
suppose	يفترض	supposed	supposed
disappear	تجيوش	disappeared	disappeared

Connect Plus 6 ⊢

23

		Cin 1	, .
talk about	يتكلم عن	talked about	talked about
wash	يغسل	washed	washed
clean	أينظف	cleaned	cleaned
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed	mixed
look	يبدو	looked	looked
use	یستخدم - یستعمل	used	used
arrive at	بالالا	arrived at	arrived at
prefer	يَمَمِّل	preferred	preferred
dry	يُجَمِّف	dried	dried

irregular verbs مُنظمة مُعال عبر منتظمة

	20065		
set an alarm	بضبط منبه	set an alarm	set an alarm
hear	Somi	heard	heard
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
know .	يعلم - يعرف	knew	known
feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
leave · ·	يغادر - يترګ	left.	left
go	يذهب	went	gone
get up	ينهض - يستيقظ	got up	got up

Definitions Plants S B Student's Rook

messy : not clean or tidy

disappear : to go away; you can't see it any more

uncomfortable : not feeling nice on your skin

relaxing: making you happy and not worried



Read and learn

The state of the s : Have you heard about this competition, 🕦 مشروع إبداعت Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project 0. (ع) نشاط I'd like to enter. ﴿ التلوين - الطلا≰ 🥎 من النحب : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you 🕣 تشکیل نماذج going to make? من المهملات . I don't know. My favorite activity o is painting o. مناعة المُحَار () Noise 🕜 صلصال I always feel happy when I'm painting, If I'm 🙃 يفترض - يعتقد sad, I paint. Then I feel better. ; Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it! Hesham VONE Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong! Hesham : I prefer making things with my hands. I like sculpture @ 6, but my favorite is ordery 6. I think it's really relaxing! 1301.1 : Oh, I don't agree I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have cray on my hands. Hesham : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands. Noha . Well, yes, I suppose & you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

Grammar Study LE



We use the <u>sero conditional</u> to talk about facts and things that are true for us. We form it using (if) or (when), and the present simple or a model like can.

See .

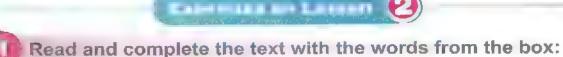
💻 تُستخدم حالة (ff) الصفرية للحديث عن الحقائق والأشياء الواقعية بالنسبة لنا. تُكَوَّن الحملة في هذه الحالة باستخدام (ff) أو (when)، مع المضارع البسيط أو مع فعل ناقص مثل (can).

- If you paint, you get paint on your hands.
- () If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.
- We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. To do this, we form it using (if) or (when), and the imperative.
- 🗏 كما تُستخدم حالـة (ff) الصفريـة لإعطاء التعليمـات أو لعمـل اقتراحـات. لفعـل ذلـك، تُكَـوَّن الجملـة باسـتخداص (if) أو (when) وصيغة الأمـر.
- If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
- When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

■لاحظ أن الجملة الثانية تكون في صيغة الأمر أي تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر، ويمكن أن تبدأ ب (Don't) ثم المصدر في حالة الأمر المنفي.

If it starts to rain, don't go out.

Enternal to Laurell



clean - leave - make - mix - use

Noha is good at painting. She tells us some important painting tips! If you mix blue and yellow, you can 0 green. If you @ and blue, you don't make pink. You make purple! If you put your brush in water, you 3 it. If you 4 your painting for about an hour, the paint dries. If you 🧕 recycled paper, you can help the environment.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

: Have you heard about this competition, Hesham? It's for any hol.a kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham: Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

: I don't know. My favorite activity is 0 . I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Lesson 2

Hesham: I prefer making things with my . I like sculpture or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

Noha: Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have

Hesham: But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

Noha: Well, yes, I suppose you 're right. Luckily, the paint

• quickly when I wash them!

Choose the correct answer:



SB

SB

SB

SB

- 1. If I do something creative, I (feeling feel) happy.
- 2. When you go for a walk, you can (find found) things for outdoor art. (5 B)
- 3. When I meet my friends, we (making make) animations.
- 4. If she has clay, she can (make makes) pottery to give her friends.
- 5. If you want to get up early, you can (set sets) an alarm.
- 6. When you go to the beach, (taking take) a sunhat.
- 7. If you mix blue and yellow, you can (makes making make) green.
- 8. If you use recycled paper, you (can't could can) help the environment.
- 9. If you put your brush in water, you (cleaning clean cleaned) it.
- 10. If you leave your painting for about an hour, the paint (dries dried dry).
- 11. If you mix red and blue, you (make don't make doesn't make) pink.

 You make purple!
- 12. He cycles to work if the weather (was is are) good.
- 13. If she's sad, she (paint don't paint paints). Then she feels better.
- 14. How (did does is) Noha feel when she is painting?
- 15. If it (start doesn't start starts) to rain, use an umbrella.
- 16. When you arrive at school, (comes come doesn't come) to the classroom.

Connect Plus 6 :--

27

- 17. What do you do if you (feel doesn't feel feels) sad?
- 18. If you paint, you (get gets got) paint on your hands.
- 19. If I go to bed late, I (doesn't gets can t) wake up in the morning.
- 20. If babies (were are is) hungry, they cry.
- 21. The paint (disappears disappear den t disappear) quickly when I wash my hands!
- 22. He always takes his umbrella when it (rained doesn't rain rains).

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. Noha does feel How painting she's when?
- ?
- 2. prefer I things making my hands with.
- 3. modeling and junk sculpture like I.
- 4. I I'm feel happy when painting always.
- 5. this competition, you heard Have about Hesham?
- 6. make to going you are What?

- 7. painting favorite My is activity.
- 8. Why pottery Noha like doesn't?
- ?
- 9. disappears The paint when my hands I wash!
- 10. if you do sad What do feel you?

Lawren 2 A night of colors



		The same of the sa	
Poetitr			
poem	قصيدة شعريه	lines	بطور
poet,	شاعر	rhyme (n)	الشعر) الشعل
verse	ىپت شعر - مقطع شعرى	rhyme (v)	مَفْب سطُم الشعر المُقَفَّم
Adjectives		-	
bright	لامع - برَّاق	real	فيقب
dark	مظلمة - سوداء	loud	الرب الهوب
quiet	هادئ	high	نال مريقع
colorful	مَلْوْن - مُزركش	far away	عَلَّدُونَ أَنْ وَعَلَيْهِ
so beautiful	جمیل جدًا		ابت
Adjuste			غروم (أعوال)
brightly	ہنمعان - ہبریق	noisily	شکل صاخب - بضجیج
brilliantly	بتوهٔج	happily	سعادة - بفرح
Itepositions			حاومی در
shoot ·	تبطلق لأعلب	take off	يطلق،
the end	مىن نھاية	example	علده سبيني بامثنان
Other words			المجالجا
a night of colors	ليلة مليئة بالألوان	hold our breath	دىس أىماسنا
day	النهار	fireworks	वृग्नाम दृखा
concert	حفلة موسيقية	flashes of light	ومصات من الصوء
jewels	حواهر - دلاية	blasts	althail alsays
gold	uan	bang (v)	غرقعة
silver	được được	describe	(១ភ

Conjugation of serior

Regular verbs قصطناه العالم

Present			
describe	يَصِف	described	described
explode	يمرقع - يتفجر	exploded	exploded
taste	يتذوق	tasted	tasted
smell	بشم	smelled	smelled
shout	تمتک - نصاد	shouted	shouted
cheer	عينا - بويها	cheered	cheered
dance	يرقص	danced	danced
imagine	ينخيل ور	imagined	imagined
look like	מיי זאה	looked like	looked like
fill	المر المرا	filled	filled

irregular verbs منتظمة

(TIME			CHE
	ٔ ہکتب	wrote	written
1 2	يسمع	heard	heard
١,	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
0.7.	(v)i	saw	seen
stand t gether	نقف سویا	stood together	stood together
theor di	تبطنق لأعلب	shot up	shot up
• ,	يطبر	flew	flown
taneeff	ينطلق	took off	taken off
shine	ً تلمع - سطع - نُشرق	shone	shone
hold	تسميا	held	held
burn	يحترق - يشتعل	burnt (burned)	burnt (burned)



Step Ahead



In a poem, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader imagine the way something real looks. For example, the fireworks in the sky are not really jewels, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.

مم القصيدة، يستجده الشاعر كلمات أو شيئًا غير حقيقي أحيانًا لمساعدة القارمًا علم بحيل الشكل الدم يبدو عليه الشمء الحميقي. علم سبيل المثال، الألعاب النارية مم السماء ليست مجوهرات حمًا، ولكنها جميلة حدًا لدرجة تجعلها تُشبه المجوهرات.



La Wight of Calors

We stand together o in the cold, black night, The sky is dark and far away o.

Everything is quiet and still , until – BANG!
The lights make the sky as bright as day.

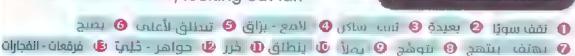
Rockets shoot up o into the air,

We shout and cheer watching them fly.
Colors burn brilliantly against the black,
We see them dance happily through the sky.

The sound fills omy ears, as each rocket takes of the Exploding noisily with flashes of light. Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold, Are beautiful jewels on the black night.

With blasts so loud and rockets up high, A colorful fire against the stars.

The sky shines brightly with light and color, We hold our breath on looking out far.



🗗 السطع ببهاء - المع ببريق 🤨 لحبس القاسنا







Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

imagine - poem - jewels - poet - fireworks

In a • , the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader • the way something real looks.

For example, in our poem, the • in the sky are not really , but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. He is a (poem poetry poet). He wrote lots of poems
- 2. A (verse -rocket -light) is a part of the poem.
- 3. A (poem -verse rhyme) is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.
- 4. Rockets (wake shoot run) up into the air and quickly go through the sky.
- 5. Most (jewels pottery cloth) are made of gold and silver.
- 6. In a (class concert test), musicians play pieces of music.
- 7. When a rocket takes (of off from), it makes much noise.
- 8. We (catch hold test) our breath while watching exciting matches.
- 9. It's usually (dark -day -sunny) at night.
- 10. When we shoot (fireworks stars suns) into the air, they burn brilliantly against the black sky.



Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hil I'm Tamer. Last week, my friend Hani invited me and some of his friends to his birthday party. It was in a park in the open air at night. That night was very dark. We stood together in the cold, black night. The sky was dark and far away. Everything was quiet and still until the lights made the sky as bright as day. Rockets of fireworks shot up into the air. We shouted and cheered. Colors burned brilliantly against the black sky. The sound filled my ears as each rocket took off, exploding noisily with flashes of light. The sky shone brightly with light and color.



→ Step Ahead

We held our breath, looking out far. We were very happy. We ate, drank and played games. It was a day to remember.

- Choose the correct answer:
 - 1. At first, the sky was (dark bright brilliant) and far away.
 - 2. (Fireworks Stars Moons) made the sky full of colors and lights.
- Answer these questions:

- 3. Where was the party?
- 4. What did the children do at the party?
- Order the words to make correct sentences:
 - 1. the sky make The lights day as bright as.
 - 2. are lines How many each verse in?
 - 3. Rockets into air the shoot up.
 - 4. find words Can rhyming you any?
 - 5. jewels look like the sky in The colors.
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"A party that I liked a lot"

- When was the party? And Where?
- What did you and your friends (family) do? Why did you like it?





Beautiful soulptures



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



sculptures منحوبات - تماثیل



sculptor نڈات /



materials مواد خام



s<mark>əheres</mark> کُرات صغیرة



pieces of art قِطُع فنية



irreguer | نمط غیر منتظم



/ فقاعات - فقاقیع



<mark>، جانودد</mark> /بعکس-يُبئن-يُظهر

Extra Vocabillary

Adjectives

new	خدثد	shiny	لامع - برْاق
interesting	مشوّق - مثير للاهتمام	huge mirror	مرآة ضخمة
famous	مشهور	popular sight	مغلم سيادي شهبر

Places

UK	بريطانيا - المملكة المتحدة	London	لندن
 USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Chicago	شيكاغو (إحدى الولايات الأمريكية)
Spain	إسبانيا	Bilbao	بلباو (مدينة في إسبانيا)
India	الهند	Guggenheim Museum متحف جوجنهایم (موجود فی مدینة بلباو)	



Other words

public places	أماكن عامة	great artist	مىان رائع - فنان عظيم،
stainless steel مولاذ مقاوم للصدأ	استانلس سىيل - ذ	designer	فطقه
shapes	أشكال	image	<u>مورة</u>
height	ارتماع	stay in place	نظل محيمطة بفيستها الفنية
location	موقع	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
floating	طافٍ - عائم	over the years	ر علم، مدار السلين

Conjugation of verba

Regular verbs and in his

	WINKED L	THE STATE OF THE S	
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
study	ہدرس - یذاکر	studied	studied
arrange	يُرَبِّب - يُنَظُم	arranged	arranged
stay	بيبقه - يظل	stayed	stayed
damage	يَتْلِفَ - يُدمّر	damaged	damaged
walk	أتمشدة	walked	walked
reflect	يعكس - يُبيِّن - يُظهر	reflected	reflected
float	يطفو	floated	floated

Anish Kapoor's sculptures

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor 1. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes 2 as well as different materials 6. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art 1 for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.



🚺 نِدُانَ 🥹 أَشْكَالَ 3 مواد 🍑 مُطع مُنية





Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous . Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres 6. Stainless steel is very



shiny 🔊, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you تمثال- منحوتة can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern o. This makes them look like bubbles o which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree and

ن کراں 🕜 لامع - براق hai (3) 😢 فقاعات الله الله 🕦 يعكس 🕑 فغلم - فرار

the Eye, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage to it. Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor sculpture is Cloud Gate. You can see it in Chicago, USA. Cloud Gate is very high - people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which reflects @ the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

	Definitions alays S B student's Book
sculptor	: a person who makes sculptures
bubble	: a liquid ball full of air
sphere	the shape of a ball
irregular	: not following a pattern
reflect	: when a mirror shows an image
material	what something is made from, for example, gold,

clay, wood



Activity Book Text

The Sibelius Monument was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in Northern Europe Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.

The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

ثبين نصب سبيليوس التذكاري عام 1967 نطيدًا للموسيقار الشهير حال سبيليوس الصورت بوفي عام 1957. كان سبيليوس من دولة مبليدا، وهي تقع في شمال أوروبا الإحرال أحمال سبيليوس بحظين بشعبية حنين يومنا هذا وينم عرفها مين الحفلات الموسيقية والمساري ممرحم برائداء العالم. النمثال من صبع الفنانة إيلا هيلتونن وهي أيضًا من فنليدا يتكون التمثال من 600 اليوب مولادي بأحجام مصلفة في شكل غير منتظم. يبلغ ارتفاعه 8.5 ميرًا وعرضه 10,5 مين أرادت هيليوس أن يبدو شكل النمثال مثل صوت موسيقي سبيليوس. بسبطيع أن حرب هذا التمثال مدر عدارة سبيليوس. في طمنع أن حرب هذا التمثال مدر عدارة سبيليوس.





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

shapes - public - sculptor - art - materials

Anish Kapoor is a 0	
and moved to London, Uf	K. to study art in 1973. He likes to use new
and interesting	as well as different 6
Kapoor makes very large p	pieces of art for public places, and people can
see his 4 al	l over the world.

Connect Plus 6 -

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mariam: Hi, Yasmine! Do you know Anish Kapoor?

Yasmine: Hi, Mariam! No, I don't know him. Who is he?

Mariam: He is a 0 ... He can make amazing sculptures.

Yasmine: Where is Anish Kapoor from?

Mariam: He was born in India but he moved to London, UK.

Yasmine: What @ does he use for making sculptures?

Mariam: He uses stainless steel as a material to make his sculptures.

Yasmine: Why does he use 9 steel?

Mariam : He uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's

very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and

bad weather doesn't 0 it.

Choose the correct answer:

1. A (sculptor - bubble) is a liquid ball full of air.

SB

Student s

Book

2. A (sphere - square) is the shape of a ball.

S B

3. The word (irregular - stainless steel) means not following a pattern.

4. When a mirror shows an image, it (understands - reflects) the image. [5]8

5. The (material - sculpture) is what something is made from, for example, gold, clay, or wood. SB

The (sculptor - designer) is a person who makes sculptures.

5 B

- 7. This dress is made of cotton. It's a very good (sphere material bubble).
- 8. The (triangle square sphere) is completely round, like a ball.
- 9. Stainless steel is a very (dark black shiny) material. It is bright.

- 10. Mirrors (watch look reflect) the images of things.
- 11. The spheres of this sculpture look like (bubbles squares triangles) which are floating!
- 12. Anish Kapoor is a (sculptor tailor sailor). He can make amazing sculptures.
- 13. When we put a plastic ball in water, it (floats walks arranges).
- 14. Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong (pattern material bubble).

Read the following text and answer the questions:

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

Choose the correct answer:

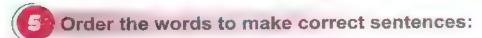
- 1. Anish Kapoor studied art in (India UK USA).
- 2. Kapoor is a great (actor writer artist).

Answer these questions:

- 3. How old was Kapoor when he went to London?
- 4. Why can Kapoor make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time?

Connect Plus 6+

39



1. does - Why - stainless steel - use - Kapoor?

·····?

2. Kapoor - sculptures - many - made - famous - has.

billion in the second s

3. shiny - very - is - steel - Stainless.

4. about - sculpture - is - This - tall - 13 meters.

. . . .

5. from - Anish Kapoor - is - Where?

?

6. are arranged - The spheres - in - pattern - an irregular.

7. great - is - artist - Kapoor - a.

to the second se

8. art - study - Kapoor - did - Where?

. .



Locatin & Longium



الكنمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



musician / موسيقار - عازف



musical skills , مهارات موسیقیة



talented موهوب



ٔ جائزة



musical instrument, ﴿ آلة موسيقية



cello الىشىللو (آلة موسيقية)،



guitar ، الجيتار



' perform / يۇدى



مسرح

theater



stage . خشبة المسرح



. ممثّل

actor



'interviewer ، محاور – مديع

		the same of the sa	· Marian
concert	حفلة موسيفية	magazine	مجلة
poems	مَصالُد شِعرية	imagination	خيال
special ability	قدرة حاصة	for over an hour	لأكثر من ساعة
his own songs	أغانيه الخاصة	on a sunny day	في يوم مشمس
strings	أُوتَارِ (الآلاب الموسيقية)	somewhere	فی مکان ما
do something we	يُتمّن فعل شيءٍ ما 🔃	everywhere	ً فی کل مکان

Adjections

confidentواثقa bit nervousamazingمحظوظluckysurprisedندهش - متفاجمtired

Language than of variou

Regular verbs aanna dissil

perform	پۇدىي	performed	performed
act	يُمَثِّل	acted	acted
relax	یسترخی - یستریح	relaxed	relaxed
play music	يعرف موسيقى	played music	played music
practice	يتدرب - يتمرن	practiced	practiced
hope	يأمل - يتمنى	hoped	hoped
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	breathed
love	بت	loved	loved
include	يتضمن - يشمل	included	included

Irregular verba

do	يفعل	did	done
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يُعطب - يمنح	gave	given
sing	يغني	sang	sung
have	ميما - طلتمي	had	had
put	. ويشا	put	put
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant
forget	رمسني	forgot	forgotten

أضال منز بالناب



→ Step Ahead

😉 مُتُغب - مُرْهُق

قدلس بين شيا 🗗

🚺 مندهش

و محطوظ

Definitions Property S B Student's

musician : a person whose job is playing music

talented: with a special ability to do something well

perform: show your acting or musical skills to other people

stage: the part of a theater where actors act

cello : a kind of musical instrument with strings

award : a prize

Read and learn

Interviewer: Wow, Mazen! The concert • was amazing! You're so

talented 9!

سموسيقب : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm

always tired after a concert!

Interviewer: I'm not surprised 4. You played the

guitar and sang for over an hour 9!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew

about the problem I had before the

concert!

Interviewer: A problem – what was that?

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different

room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it

behind the door. I was very lucky @!

Grammar Study



عبارة الجر (تحنوب علم حرف حر)

A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun, or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective. It doesn't contain a verb. Prepositions can include:

الجر هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر، وأحيانًا تنتهي بصفة. ولا تحتوي عبارة الجر على فعل.

حروف الجريمكن أن تشمل:



I'm always tired after a concert.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

▶ I'm always a bit nervous when I'm on stage.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

I try to breathe slowly before a concert to help me relax.

preposition noun A prepositional phrase

At your last concert, you looked very confident.

preposition

7

A prepositional phrase



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Interviewer: Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're

Mazen

: Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

44

Step Ahead

- timesis),

- -). He is talented at playing the piano.

the stage.

10. He is a (11

The cello and guitar are musical (

Choose the correct answer:

(Structures)

- 1. A musician prepares his instruments (after before) the concert.
- 2. A singer sings (in on) stage.
- 3. The ball is (into under) the chair.
- 4. I always go to beaches (in on) sunny days.
- 5. Ali puts his books (at in) his school bag.
- 6. Nada goes home (before after) school.
- 7. The lion runs (on through) the forest.
- 8. I found my cat (in behind) the door.
- 9. Aya puts her pens (on in) the pencil case.
- 10. Sleep eight hours a day. It's good (in for) you.
- 11. Maha was late (for on) school yesterday.
- 12. Mom came (on into) my room and talked to me about my school day.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. musician was a Sayed Darwish Egyptian famous.
- 2. do What do you a sunny on day?

- ?
- 3. one day hope Mazen does to do What?
- ?
- 4. concert The amazing was!
- 5, doing Mazen is What?

- 6. I somewhere guitar put my.
- 7. after always concert I'm a tired!
- 8. guitar my find couldn't !!
- 9. is be There going to next week a concert.
- 10. saw the door the guitar My friend behind.
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"What do you always do after school?"



Lesson & Westing a report



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



pottery project مشروع الفخار (الخرص).



The state of the s

lump of clay قطعة صلصال



pottery wheel ، عجلة الفخار (الخزف)



, decorate يُزيِّن - يُزَدِّرف



apron



<mark>kiln</mark> فرن لِصُنْع الأشياء الخرفية



oven



report

تقرير



، مريلة

ترتيب الأحداث - تسلسُل الأحداث the order of events طلاء خاص

فرن

bowl

ready وعاء - سلطانية

جاهز - مستعد

our turn

title دورنا

عنوان



wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
happen	يَحُدُث	happened	happened
compare	يقارن	compared	compared
decorate	يُزيِّں - يُزِّحْرِف	decorated	decorated



imagutar perba

	denil	Carrier D	
put on	ىرتدب - يلبس	put on	put on
get hot	يشدن يصبح سانيا	got hot	got hot
make it hard	يدعله صائا	made it hard	made it hard
take it out	الدرده	took it out	taken it out



يند كتابة تقرير، تَذَكْر الأتي: When you write a report, remember that: عند كتابة تقرير، تَذَكْر الأتي

- 1. The title tells readers the topic or subject of the report.
- 2. The pictures make the report look interesting, and help the reader imagine.
- 3. The report has a beginning, a middle, and an end. It explains what happened and what order it happened in.
 - يخبر العنوان القراء بموضوع أو محتوى التقرير.
 - . 2. الصور يجعل التقرير بيدو مثيرًا للاهتمام، ونساعد القاربةُ على البحثُـل
 - 3. التقرير له بدايه ووسط ونهاية. إنه بشرح ما حدث والترتيب الدب حدث نه.

TREB

- We can use "when" to talk about the order in which things happen.

 Both parts of the sentence are in the same tense.
 - يمكننا استخدام (when) للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث به الأشياء. وبكون كِلا جُزأُيْ الحملة في نفس الزمن،
 - When my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.



My pottery project by amou



My class worked on a pottery project • at school this week. We started with a lump of clay •, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

🕕 مشروع الفخار (الخزف)

و قطعة ملمال



First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel .

Then it was our turn .

We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, It went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

🕹 دورلا 🖯 فرایل



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln . This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

🧿 فرن لصنع الأشياء الخزفية



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate only bowl.



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry.
Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.



I really enjoyed omaking my bowl!
When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday.
She loved it!

😉 استمتعت



Consider on Lances (6)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

clay - decorated - pottery - project - bowl

Hello! I'm Amal. My class worked on a
this week. We started with a lump of
, and

make. I wanted to make a

it. It was an amazing experience.

project at school , and we chose what to

. I made it and @

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Interviewer: What did you do this week, Amal?

Amal : My class worked on a pottery •

at school

this week.

Interviewer: Who helped you with this project?

Amal : Our @, Mr Yasser.

Interviewer: How did he help you?

Amal : He showed us how to use a pottery o

Interviewer: What did you make?

Amal : I made a bowl and I used special paint to decorate it.

Interviewer: Who did you give it to?

Amal : I gave it to my o . She was very happy.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. bowl - a - make - to - wanted - l.

2. We - clothes - over - aprons - our - put on.

- 3. the clay makes hard and The kiln strong.
- 4. We waited for to be the bowl cool.

- 5. special paint used I to my bowl decorate.
- 6. really I making enjoyed bowl my!
- 7. make to what chose children The.
- 8. bowl circles made on Amal her.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. I put on an apron over my clothes and started my pottery object. It was a bowl. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it. I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it and said, "Thanks, Amal."

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Amal's class worked on a (painting building pottery) project at school this week.
- 2. Amal made a (bowl pot pan).





Answer these questions:

- 3. What did the teacher do first?
- 4. What's a kiln?
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:
 - Use "when" to show the order of events.

"A creative project you have done at school"



Lesson I Story Behind the camera



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



school show عرض مدرسي



play (n) مس رحية/



choir کورَس - کورال - فرقة



costumes ، ازیاء - ملابس



photography التصوير



exhibition مَعْرَض



advertisement اعلان



edit (۷) يُعَدِّل

1	Extra Vecabulary		كامان إندانييا
the audience	الجمهور	artwork	يمنف لمد
museum	ميجف	festivals	مهرجانات - احتفالات
website	موقع إلكترونى	shelf	نْهَ
except	باسشاء - عدا	buttons	וֹנעוֹנ
special clothe	ملابس حاضة 🔹	lighter	أفتح
well done	أد سنت	darker	أغمق

Reboritions			
on stage	علم خشبة المسرح	at the side of	على جانب
on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	walk past	یمر ۱ - یمشي ىجوار
on the way home	مي الطريق للبيت	in the shadow	فرب الخلفية
at home	في البيت	for a long time	لفترة طويلة



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs معنل مسلم

- January Company			
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	learned (learnt)
edit	ابُعدًال	edited	edited
smile	L omiti	smiled	smiled

hregular verbs again us disal

lynin			
say	يقول	said	said
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	thought
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos	taken photos
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Definitions Pages SIB Student's

advertisement: this tells people about an event, so they want to see it

choir : a group of people who sing together

costumes : special clothes that people wear at festivals or on

stage

edit : to change photos to make them better

exhibition: a group of artworks in one place for people to see

photography: the activity or job of taking photographs

play: a story that you watch at the theater

Read and learn

Educate and bounds

It was two weeks until the school show o, and everybody was excited. Everybody except @ Magdy. "I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed. "The choir o is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma.

"And I'm going to make costumes of for the choir," said Dalia, "I've written a funny play o !" said Samir.

Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing. "What am I going to do?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy walked past o the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition . A black and white photo showed

yourself. Can you think of something?"



a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience o in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music. At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a

shelf . "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography 🕦 عرض مدرسات at school?" "No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons @ on the camera. Then he learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the مَزَيْدِ مُؤْنِدِوالِ 6 exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took photos of things he saw. Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried. I don't like being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrument o." "Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to express الله موسيفيه 🕩

🔞 الجمهور

😢 باستثناء - عدا

🚯 کورال کورس

🐠 أزياء ما\بس

و مسرحیه

ம்ப

المعرض 🕜

از رار

said his teacher. "I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our school website," said Magdy. Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy.

😰 تمزن - تدرِّب

نۇدىي 🚯

🛂 مصوّر

their lines. On the evening of the show, they were happy and ready to When each person was on stage, Magdy took photos. Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week. "You're going to be a great

(A) Magdy," said his dad.

Activity Book Text

It was the day ofter the school show. Magely's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

खुर है जिसे कर्ड कुरिय जिस्सा भिर्म क्यारिय क्यारिय क्यार्थ क्रियो क्याला क्रियो

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you," said Samir.

قال سمير: "مرحبًا ياجدتي. لقد جئت لزيارتك."

"Helio, Samır," said Grandma. "How was the school show? Were you in a play?"

قالت الجدة: "مرحبًا يا سمير كيف كان العرض المدرسي؟ هل كنت في مسرحية؟"

"It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

قال سمير بحماس "كان راثغًا عجديما لكنيما لم أكن في المسرحية. أبا ومحدم، لا نحب النفثيل. كان محدما هـو المصور للعرض المدرسي ولكن وطيمتي كانت أمصل من ذلك. لمد ساعدت الأستاد ابراهيم في صنع الركائز (الديكور)."

"What are props?" asked Grandma.

سألت الجدة: "ما هي الركائز؟"

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real," said Samir. "If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But sometimes we make them!"

قال سمير "الركائر هم الأشياء التي يجتاجها الممثلون علم جشية المسرح لأداء المسرحية ممثلاً إذا كانت المسرحية تدور أحداثها حول عائلة مم الميزل فم غرفة المعيشة، مأنت بحاجه

إلما بعض الأثاث مثل أربكه أو مصباح أو بعض الصور للحائط. وفما بعض الأحيال نحصل علما الأشياء التي نحتاجها من الوالدين ولكن في بعض الأحيان نصنعها."

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

قالت الجدة وهي تبدو مندهشة: "أنتم تصنعوها؟"

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper anything! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do," explained Samir.

قال سمير موضحًا. "بعم، أحب صبع الأشياء ياحدتم نستخدم الخشب والكرنون والورق الملون ... أي شمئا مفعلمت الأستاد إبراهيم جيد حدًا فت صنع الأشياء وشرح لي ما يجب عليًّا أن أمعل."

"That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة: "هذا يبدو مثيرًا ياسمير. أود أن أرب بعض الأشياء التي صنعتها."

"That's easy," said Samir. "Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you!"

رقال سمير: "هذا شهل. لقد وضع مجدب صوره علما موقع المدرسة. سأُحضِر هاتفت وسأعرضُها لك!"

Entrainm no Lesson 🕡

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

: What are you going to do in the next school o

?

Magdy

: I'm worried. I don't go to piano lessons, and I don't like

singing.

Mom

: When is the show?

Magdy

: It's in two weeks.

Mom

: I have an idea for you. What about taking photos of the show

for the school @?

Magdy

: Great idea! I like
very much. I will ask dad for his camera. I also have good skills on how to

the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

Mom

Good luck, dear!

Magdy

: Thanks, mom. Finally, I have the chance to express myself.

Choose the correct answer:

1. The (advertisement - show - competition) tells people about an event, so they want to see it.



Step Ahead

- 2. The (choir team audience) is a group of people who sing together.
- 3. The (uniform coat costumes) are special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage.
- 4. He can (express eest enter) photos well. He can change them to make them better.
- 5. The (competition exhibition animation) is a group of artworks in one place for people to see.
- 6. (Photography Painting Acting) is the activity or job of taking photographs.
- 7. The (film movie play) is a story that you watch at the theater.
- 8. The (students audience parents) are people who watch a show at a theater or cinema.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

Kareem and his family went to a photography exhibition last week. He saw many colorful photos there. He bought some photography books, too. He read about different kinds of cameras. He took many photos with his camera. He learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. He put his photos on the school website. He was very excited.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Kareem learned how to (edit read play sing) the photos on the computer.
- 2. Kareem put his photos on the school (magazine website paper board).

Answer these questions:

- 3. Where did Kareem and his family go last week? 🐞
- 4. What did Kareem buy?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. Magdy's job - was - show - What - at - the?

2. piano - the - play - to - going - I'm.

3. is - - to - going - beautiful songs - sing.

4. play - funny - a - written - I've!

5. an - can't - instrument - | - play.

6. a - good - has - - camera.

7. at school - photography - studying - you - - ?

8. I - stage - being - like - on - don't.

. the photos - can - edit - - for - website - our school.

10. like - I - don't - or acting - singing.

11. a great - photographer - to - be - going.

12. borrowed - - camera - dad's - his.

Write an email to your friend Ramez:

Tell him about your favorite hobbies and when you practice them. Your email address is ______, and your friend's email address

SI

From:

To:

Subject:

	Total
	الصا الاستماع موجودان أدر المدار
	Comment of Company Comment of Com
Liste	en and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)
I. There is a	a big art (· · · · · ·) in the city today.
2. People c or a car.	an try junk () and build a rocket
3. People c clothes.	an use recycled () to design their own
4. We can u	use beads to make beautiful ().
Liste	n and answer the questions: (2Ms)
	(ZIVIS)
4 140 11	
1. What is	Anish Kapoor's job?
	Anish Kapoor's job?
	
2. Where	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye?
2. Where	Anish Kapoor's job?
2. Where	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye?
2. Where	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? Oly the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)
2. Where Supp	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? Oly the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms) : Have you heard about the •
2. Where Supp	Anish Kapoor's job? can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? ly the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms) : Have you heard about the •
2. Where Supp Nour Alla Nour	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? If the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms) : Have you heard about the
2. Where Supp Nour Alla Nour	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? If the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms) Have you heard about the
2. Where Supp Nour Alla Nour Alla Nour	can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye? If the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms) : Have you heard about the



Computers are very important in our life. Today, computers are used everywhere. They are used for animation. They are used in banks to store information about people's money. Secretaries use them in offices to write letters. Factories use computers in robots that can do dirty and dangers us work. Most books and newspapers are made with the help of completers. Computers are used to help planes to take off and land. They are also used in hospitals to help doctors to examine their patients. In the letters, students won't go to schools. They will be able to learn from consoluters at home.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Computers are used banks hospitals factories) to help doctors.
- 2. The underlined v ord "the refers to (computers secretaries letters).

Answer these questions:

- 3. How are computers important in factories?
- 4. Who uses computers to write letters?

The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

And the second s		
A- Re. and write T (True) or F (False):	(4M	s)
1. Asser saw his mom at the school gates.	()
2. The children's Grandma took them to her house after school.	()
Answer the following questions:		
3. What did Asser do when he saw his Grandma?		

62

4. Why could Mayar read the book by herself?

Step Ahead



Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. You could use a (computer cloth clay cardboard) to make an animation.
- 2. I can (find finding finds found) things for outdoor art when I go for a walk.
- 3. If it starts to rain, (using use used uses) an umbrella.
- 4. Ahmed can (hear smell taste see) the sound of the rockets.
- Mona makes her jewelry by using colored (beads bottles sculptures - leaves).
- 6. When she goes to the beach, she (take took takes would take) a sunhat.

Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

- 1. messy getting Do your hands like you?
- 2 outdoor sculptures good Stainless steel is for.
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

get up early – wash – breakfast – by bus –
study – different subjects – break – library – return – home –
afternoon





Connect Plus 6 -





Writing

Life skills

Issues and

challenges

- understand and use the first conditional.
- Ilsten and understand people explaining their opinions.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- write an instructional guide.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- read and understand a mystery story.

- Digitaliya

Activities: do push-ups play chess, play the violin, swap como books watch cartoons Appliances and electricity: appliance, blade, blender, candle, electric stove electric car, games console, hairdryer, invention, interactive whiteboard, laptop, lighting, microwave oven, mixer, motor, refrigerator, smoothle

Vocabulary

Phrasal verbs: clean up, hang up, mop up, pick up, put away, put out, tidy up

Other words: brick, broke down, change (the car battery), childlike curious, fix the car, great-grandmother, heat food, iron the clothes, milkshake, programmed, shocked, vaccine

Words related to caring for animals, attention, collar, claws, furry, sharpen, stroke, vaccinations

Language First conditional: If it's not tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

Phrasal verbs: I think we need to clean up the kitchen.

Reading

A description of a room; an information text about an appliance, a story about robots in the future; a story about a power outage: a story about a special house

A short description of a room; rules on keeping everybody safe at home, an instructional care guide for a pet; a paragraph about your home

Speaking Describe what you have in your room, discuss appliances; retell a story

Listening A dialog about a family organizing their chores

Problem solving: how to care for a pet

Science appreciation: learning about appliances

Values - Respect - Responsibility

- Citizenship

Integrated crosscurriculum topics Science: electrical appliances and inventions

Lessen 1 My new room



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



hobbies هوایات



swapping comic books / تباذل القصص المصورة



do push-ups يقوم بتمارين الضغط



watch cartoons ریشاهد آفلام کرتوں



play the violin بيعزف علم الكمال !



play chess یلعب شطرنج



sporty / شخص ریاضی



apartment قَصْشُ ،

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Adjective

light	awesome لطيفة	رائع - مدهش
comfortable	fantastic مريحة	راثع - مدهش
funny	so happy امْرِح - مُسلىي	سعید جدًا
favorite ,	much better فَفَظُّل	أفضل بكثير
tired	quite difficult مُتعَب - مُرهَق	ر صعب إلى حدٍ ما

PCs	أجهره حاسوب (كمبيوتر)	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر	chess club	نادي الشطريج
noise	ضوضاء - ضجيج	board games	ألعاب لوحية
musical instrume	nt آلة موسيقية	luckily	لحسن الحظ
get bored with	یشعر بالمل <mark>ل م</mark> ن	size	حجم - مقاس
especially	خاصةً - خصوصًا	space	مساحة - فراغ

Connect Plus 6 -



Conjugation of verbi

Regular verbs appuis deal

Present

listen	يستمع	listened	listened
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
share with	يتشارك مع	shared with	shared with
move into	ينتقل إلى	moved into	moved into
practice	يتدرِّب - يتمرَّن	practiced	practiced
chat	يدردش	chatted	chatted
swap	يتبادل	swapped	swapped

liregular verbs

أمعال عير مبتطمة

Present

		_	The second second
read	يقرأ	read	read
do	يفعل	did	done
get bored	يملّ - يشعر بالملل	got bored	got bored
get stronger	يُصبح أقوى	got stronger	got stronger

Did you know?

Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

تنباقص أعداد أمراد العابلات الحدث الله إلى مستمرا يضمُ الأسرة <mark>المتوسطة الآن ثلاثة أو</mark> أربعة أمراد ممعميل عليلية واحدث عدد الأفراد في كل منزل عائليّ سبعة!

Did you know?

One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

تم إنتاج إحدى أو من أماده بنين المسلم أوائل المرن العشرين في فرنسا. وكان هذا الفيلم يعرض شخصًا على شكل عصا بسيطة يتحرك!





My fantastic bedroom

by Seleem



We moved into 10 a new apartment 20 a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother. Maged, and we're good friends.

We have a long desk for our PCs o so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better

than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise of there from our little sister and the TV! When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends - that's a lot of fun! My favorite game is a building game o. We watch cartoons @ with our friends, too.

I also love swapping comic books @, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

I'm learning to play the violin of at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very sporty and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does push-ups in our room - he often does 30 in the evening!

Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all awesome . Before we moved, we only chatted to . them online, but it's better now that we have a bigger bedroom. They come to our house to talk in our room.

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing chess b player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me.

Maged and I like board games . We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room! Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the

same size 🕏 as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom - my favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies @ and for our friends!



- التقل إلى
 - க்கம் 😢
 - ق لطيمة
- 🗗 أجهزة كمبيوتر
- 😏 الكثير من الإزعاج (Respects)
 - العية بئاء
 - 🕡 آملام رسوی متحركة
 - 🔞 تبادل القصص المصورة
 - و الكمان (ألة موسیقیة)
 - 🍱 بمان بضجر
 - 🛈 شخص ریاضمی
 - 🕑 تمارين الضغط
 - श्री। 🕒
 - 👜 پدردش مع
 - 🗗 شطرنج
- 😈 الألعاب اللوحية 🏖 حجور – مقاس



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

building - cartoons - swapping - game - computer

When my brother and I finish our homework, we can play of games with our friends - that's a lot of fun! My favorite of is a building game. We watch of with our friends, too. I also like of the comic books, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mazen: Hi, Seleem! I heard you moved into a new •

Congratulations!

Seleem: Thanks, Maged! Hove my new bedroom. It's very light and

2

Mazen: How about your brother's room?

Seleem: My brother, Maged, and I the same room.

We're good friends.

Mazen: What do you have in your bedroom?

Seleem: We have a long desk for our PCs, so we can do our

homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in

the living room! There's too much

• there from our little sister and the TV!

Mazen: I hope you enjoy your time in it.

Seleem: Thanks, Maged!

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sporty - bored - practice - push-ups - violin

Hi! I'm Seleem. I'm learning to play the
at the moment,
and I a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my
brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very
and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does a in
our room – he often does 30 in the evening!



Choose the correct answer:



- 1. I usually (play chess swap comic books watch cartoons) on TV. They're funny!
- SB
- 2. I often (do push-ups play the violin swap comic books) with my friends so that I have something new to read.



- 3. I (play chess play the violin watch cartoons) because my mom says it's good to learn a musical instrument.
- 4. I (do push-ups play chess play the violar) in my room because I want to get stronger!
- 5. I (play chess swap comic books watch cartoons) with my friend
 Sherif. He's very good and always wins!
- 6. He's very (comfortable sporty tired) and plays a lot of volleyball.
- 7. Maged likes (board broad bores) games like chess.
- 8. Nour plays the (violin chess voileyball). She likes music.
- 9. Mariam loves (comic books postr ups cartoons), She likes reading.
- 10. Asmaa watches (push ups cartoons books). She watches them on
- 11. Samir always does (cartoons come books push-ups) in his room. He is sporty.
- 12. Hadeer likes playing (chess volleyball violin). It's a board game.
- 13. Many children (watch play do) cartoons on TV.
- 14. Hazem (makes piays does) push-ups. He often does 30 in the evening!
- 15. Doha likes to (play swap work) comic books with her friends.
- 16. Nader always (does visits plays) chess with his friends. He likes thinking games.
- Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. moved apartment into We a new.
- 2. is an Sherif amazing player chess.



- 3. and I many of have friends Maged the same.
- 4. you do What your like about bedroom?
- 5. watch with cartoons We friends our.
- 6. love books I swapping comic.
- 7. brother My does our room push-ups in.
- 8. difficult is quite Chess me for.
- 9. and board I like Maged games.
- 10. your bedroom What you do in do?
- Write an email to your friend Merna:

Tell her that you moved into a new apartment; you are happy because you have a new bedroom. Your email address is gameela@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is merna@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

Lunuu I Language



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



appliance جهاز کهربائپ



machir.e äll,



motor مُحرِّك - مُوبور مُحرِّك -



blade , نُصْل - شفرة



invent پخترع





vaccine ، لَماح – مصل



heat (۷) بُسَدِّن



blender خلاط



ر ثلاجة , ثلاجة



toaster محمصة خُبْر كهربائية



hairdryer مُجَمِّف شَعر



games console) /وحدة التحكم في الألعاب



لهونوه حاسوب محمول



milkshake مخفوق الحليب



smoothie عصير محفوق/

, (E)	ktra Vocabulary	لماب اطامية	5
article	مقال	scientist	عالم
kitchen	مطبخ	medicine	دواء
soups	أنواع مختلفة من الشوربة	millions of lives	ملابين الحيوات
chocolate	شوكولانة	Polish-American	<mark>بولىدى</mark> أمريكى
vanilla	مانيليا	metal	معدن
strawberries	فراولة	over the years	علم مَرّ السبيل
drink (n)	مشروب	for the first time	لأول مرة

Adjectives

useful	sharp مفید - نافع	حاد
amazing	different مدهش - مذهل	مختلف
delicious	the best لذيذ - شهريّ	ِ الأَفْضَلِ - الأحسن

Compression of the last

Regular verbs مُعَلِّلُ مَسْطُفَةُ الْمُعَالُ مُسْطُفَةً

	Present D		
invent	یخترع - یبتکر	invented	invented
blend	يخلط - يمزج	blended	blended
heat	يُسَدُّن	heated	heated
call	يدعوا - يُسَمِّمُ	called	called
turn	يلفّ - يدور	turned	turned
add	ئضِيف	added	added
move	يُحْرُك - يتحرك	moved	moved
save	يُنقِدُ ،	saved	saved
use	یستخدم - یستعمل	used	used
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغيّر	changed	changed
stop	يتوقف - يُوقِف	stopped	stopped
chop	يُقَطِّع	chopped	chopped



Irregular verbs

The second second			
put	يضع	put	put
know	العرم ، تعلم	knew	known
think	يفكّر - يعنقد	thought	thought
make	بجعل - يصنع	made	made
get sick	يمْرَص	got sick	got sick

Definitions Alares S B Student's

appliance: an object that is useful

invention: something that someone has made for the first time

motor: a part of a machine that makes something move

vaccine : a type of medicine that stops you getting ill

milkshake : a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla

smoothie: a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables

Amazing appliances

- I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance •! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie • with fruit and ice!
- 2 I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.
- 3. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented of the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade of in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops of the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended of the food together. He used his new invention of to make milkshakes.



- کلاط 🛈
- و جهاز کهربائی
- عصير مخفوق
- 🐠 اخْتَرَع ابتكر
- 🗿 ئضل شفرة
 - है वैतेषेड
- 🕜 خُلَطَ مَزْجُ
- اختراع ابتكار

4. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist . In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine . His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick . if they have a vaccine.



عاله
 أشاح - مصل
 أيمرض
 أيسدن

5. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat place food, too! Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?



المصدر و النبعاد use ... to

يستخدم لكب المد

use ... for (verb + ing) or (noun)

يستخده_ا من أجل

- I use the blender for making milkshakes with my mom.
- Mom uses the blender to make delicious soups, too.
- ▶ He used his new invention to make milkshakes.
- He used a blender for making a vaccine.

Grammar Study 2



We use the first conditional to talk about future situations. To form it, we use "if" plus the present simple and will plus the infinitive:

الله المستخدم حالة (if) الأولى للحديث عن المواقف المستقبلية. لتكوين الجملة في هذه الحالة، تُستخدم (if) + المضارع البسيط و(will) + المصدر،

المعداد + present simple → will + infinitive will + infinitive will + infinitive

will + infinitive if + present simple

will + المصدر if + المصدر if + المصدر



- ▶ If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.
- People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.
- We use "can" plus infinitive to express ability. We use "may" plus infinitive when we aren't sure:
 - تُستخدم "can" + المصدر للتعبير عن القدرة. وتُستخدم "may" + المصدر عندما لا نكون متأكدين.
 - If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.
 - If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.
- Notice that when the "if" clause is second, re don't use a comma.
 ولاحظ أنه عندما نأتي جملة (if) في الحزء الثاني من الحملة، فإننا لا نصع قاصلة (comma).
 - Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.

Note that.

الأفعال (.... – will – won't – may) لا بد أن تُتْبَع بالفعل في المصدر، ومصدر الفعل هو أصل الفعل أي هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (..... = ed – ing – ع).

Exercises on Lesson 2

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

making - make - milkshakes - appliance - blade

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Here: Hi, Doha! Guess what? Mom has bought a new modern blender.

Doha: Hi, Hend! Wow! That's interesting.

Hend: If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a 0 with fruit and ice!

Doha: It's really useful.

Hend: Do you have a blender at home?

Doha: Sure, I use it for making @ with my mom.

Hend I like milkshakes, too. My mom also uses our blender a lot to make delicious soups.

Doha: What would you do without a
..... in the kitchen?

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

medicine - won't - heat - will - vaccine

Blenders are very useful. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can • food! Blenders are useful in • too. In 1953, Dr Jonas Salk, the famous scientist, used a blender to make a vaccine. His • has saved millions of lives. People • get sick if they have a vaccine.

Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)

- 1. The () is a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla.
- 2. The (II) is a part of a machine that makes something move.
- 3. The () is something that someone has made for the first time.

	Lesson 2	2
4. The (45) is a drink made of blended fruit	ls or
sometimes vegetables.		
5. The (ਆ ਆ) is an object that is useful for us.	
6. The (⊘) is a type of medicine that stops	you
getting ill.		
7. The blender is a useful (smoothle	- vaccine - invention).	
8. In the blender, when the () turns, it ch	nops
the food.		
	turned the blade, which blended	the
food together.	4	
10. We (at) our food		
11. This (1) has saved millions of lives.	
The blender is the best kitchen (- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Choose the correct answer:	(Structures)	udents ok
1. If my hair (-) wet, I'll u	se the hairdryer.	5 B
2. If I put food in the refrigerator, it (s - will be) cold.	S B
3. We'll play with the games console	if my friends (-) to m	ıy
house.		SB
4. If I (out/III) bread in the toast	er, the bread will be hot.	SIB
5. She (with a laptop to	do her homework. I'm not sure.	5 8
6. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll (-	-) a smoothie with fru	it
and ice!	•	
7. People () 9	et sick if they have a vaccine.	
	arly, you can get a good seat.	
	catch the train; I'm not sure.	
10. Dad can take you to school (
11. I'll make milkshakes if I (-		
12. If I want to play games, I'll (
13. I'll make a smoothie if it (
14. If she (1/2 - 1/2) to		or
15. If he (goes - c' -		ŲΙ.
school.	7 to bod now, he may be late to	
16. He (comes - will a -) with us if he doesn't have froe tim	10

Connect Plus 6

77



Read the following text and answer the questions:

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new evention to make milkshakes. Nowadays, the blender is a little differce come the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. some blenders can heat food, too!



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. A (Scottish Irish Polish-American) man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender
- 2. He put a sharp blade in the (top -- bottom -- middle) of a tall glass.

Answer these questions:

- 3. Why did Stephen add a motor?
- 4. How are blenders nowadays different from the 1020s?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. your appliance favorite Which kitchen?
- 2. Blenders · medicine in useful are.
- 3. the blei lier the years Has changed over?
- 4. was a scientist famous Dr Jonas.
- 5. you do What use blender for the?
- 6. blenders food heat Some can!
- 7. you Do home have a blender at?
- 8. a blender used to Dr Jonas a vaccine make.



- Step Ahead

Live on 3 Explaining your opinion

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





electricity الكهرباء



power outage يالم التهار الكهربائي



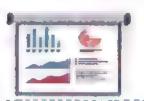
power socket مقبس کھرہائی (کُبس)



ز الإنارة - الإصاءة



extension cable / کابل تمدید (مُشْتَرَك)



interactive whiteboard) سبورة تفاعلية

النقل - المواصلات الأصواء - المصابيح المواصلات النقل - المواصلات الفلام الفلام من وجهة بظرب - في رأيي in my opinion الفلام ووم غريب غلاية كهربائية علاية كهربائية المواصدة المعاددة ال



Beigreben merbit.

A STATE OF THE STA	<u> </u>		The second secon
explain	يُوضِح - يُمَسِّر	explained	explained
point	يُشِير	pointed	pointed



disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
happen	يَحْدُث	happened	happened
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed	guessed
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
plan	يَخَطِّط	planned	planned
try	يحاول	tried	tried
like	يحب	liked	liked
love	تحن	loved	loved
agree with	ينمق مع	agreed with	agreed with

bringular mertu aahua uc peat

hear	Somi	heard	heard
tell	يَحْيِر	told	told
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
think	یفکر - یعتقد	thought	thought
mean	אטמו - תֿיִּצּיוֹ	meant	meant

Read and learn

Mariam's day at school

Mom: Hi Mariam, how was your day?

القطاع التيار الكهرباثي

Mariam: Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually.

السبورة التماعلية

We had a power outage o! My class and ! were looking at the interactive whiteboard o,

احْتُمْت 🕣

when suddenly all the information disappeared 6.

Mom : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

80

Step Ahead



Mariam: Well, first she got an extension cable o and tried a different power socket 6, but that wasn't working either.



: Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

👍 ځایل تمدید (مُشیزات)) 🕒 مقیس کھربائٹ (کُئِس)



Mariam: We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in

👩 'مِنَامُشَة - لِمُالِينَ

a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.



: Let me guess - everyone thought it was important for computer games!



Mariam: Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting discussion o.

Those opinion do you agree with most? attlemetingingi





In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.



I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.



I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender - or our refrigerator!



What about transportation? Some people have electric cars And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

Exercises on Lesson





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electricity - electric - opinion - games - think

In my o , electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too. I it's important in the kitchen, too. We couldn't use our electric kettle without or our blender – or our refrigerator!

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mom: Hi Mariam, how was your day?

Mariam : Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power

My class and I were looking at the

o whiteboard, when suddenly all the

information disappeared.

Mom : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

Mariam : Well, first she got an extension → and tried

a different o socket, but that wasn't working

either.

Mom : Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

Mariam: We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

transportation - electric - opinion - lighting - stations



82



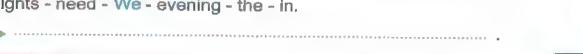
Choose the correct answer:

- 1. In my (outage opinion extension), electricity is most useful in our free time.
- 2. I (think tell shout) electricity is most important for lighting.
- 3. We need (socket nights lights) in the evening. I don't like the dark.
- 4. We couldn't use our electric kettle without (electricity extension transportation).
- 5. Some people have (electricity electric interactive) cars.
- 6. Yesterday, we had a (cable socket power) outage!
- Cars, buses, and trains are means of (discussion transportation electricity).
- She got an extension cable and tried a different power (socket outage - kettle) to get electricity.
- My class and I were looking at the (extension power interactive) whiteboard when the light went out.
- 10. We boil water in an electric (kettle car bus) to make tea.

(5)

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. important electricity is Why?
 - ?
- 2. games my brother video I with play.
- 3. Miss do What Amira did?
- 4. a is power What outage?
- 5. lights need We evening the in.



- 6. can't What throas without do we electricity?
- 7. cars have people Some electric.
- 8. stations Bus airports and electricity need.
- Write a paragraph of (66) words using the following elements:

"How is electricity in a content or

whiteboards - computers - free time - stations - airports





LELLE II Mory: The day the Bills broke down

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Bill robot إنسان آلي اسمه بيل



, <mark>terrible</mark> أرهيب - فظيع - سيم أ



iron clothes پکوپ الملابس



break down پتعطّل



shocked مصدوه



programmed to



battery قرية



chores رالأعمال المنزلية

Extra Vocabulary

المات إضافية

Adjectives

sweet	awful جميلة – حنوة	مربع - فظیع
complicated	worried مُعقَّد - صعب	مَّلِق - متوتر
ready	too difficult جاهز - مُستعِد	ِ صعب جدًا

Prepositions

on Earth	على الكرة الأرضية	wake him up	يوقظوه
on this day	في هذا اليوم	wait for	ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا)
fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرص	go on the internet	يدخل علم الإنترنت
the lights went	الطفأت الأنوار	in case	في حال أن - في جالة



Places

Australia أستراليا Egypt الماليا Alexandria الإسكندرية

Other words

life	حياة	said nothing	لم يقل شيئًا - لم يردّ
humans	البشر	pants	بنطلون
started normally	ہدأ بشكل طبيعى	microwave	مایکرویف
noise	ضور ۲۰۰ ضجیج	computer engineer	مهندس كمبيوتر
suddenly	فجأة	busily	ېھمُة - بىشاط
certainly	بالتأكيد - بالطبع	normal	شعينه - شعلد

Conjugation of verbs

Regular vertes annua disol

work	يعمل	worked	worked
fix .	يُصَلِّح	fixed	fixed
fill	يملأ	filled	filled
start	يبدأ	started	started
iron	يكوي	ironed	ironed
learn	يتعلم	learned	learned
solve	يحل	solved	solved

leregular verbs

_	The same of the sa		
lie	يرقد - ينام	lay	lain
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
fall	<u>höm</u> ı	feil	fallen
see	വു	saw	seen
wake up	يستيقظ - يفيق	woke up	woken up

86

Step Ahead

The day the Bills broke down!

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores . However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible a happened.

The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were ironing clothes o for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making

milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's' lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped. All the Bills suddenly broke down . They fell to the ground, and their lights went out 6.

One family in Alexandria was shocked o when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We're waiting for our koshari!" Bill said nothing.

Hesham, the young son, started crying, "I need a clean uniform tomorrow," he said, "And who is going to iron my school pants?" "This is awful! I programmed o Bill to fix my car and change the battery in it. What am I going to do?" Dad said.

Everyone looked very worried , but the daughter, Fareeda, said, "We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'll go on the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad told me people used to do."

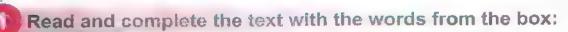
The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave or so they could heat & some food. They didn't really like that because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he becertainly didn't understand how to change the car battery - that was

- 🕕 الأعمال المنزلية
- و مطبع -- سیاتا
- 🔞 يكوت الملابس
 - 🐠 تعطّل
- (ligith classiff) (5)
 - و مصدوی
 - 🕜 زما مُودُد
 - المَخ
 - و قنق
 - Challen (O
 - 🛈 مایکرویف
 - 🔁 ئىسخى

very complicated . Hesham did well! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school!

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars, ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. However, the humans are now ready — in case the Bills break down again one day ...

Desiration on Lennon (4)



chores – Humans – robots – broke – terrible

It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet!

easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their

on this day, a year ago, something

down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ramy : Hi, Waleed! Guess what? I have read a story called "The Day

The Bills Broke Down".

Waleed : Hi, Ramy! What is it about?

Ramy: It's a story about 0. ... called the Bills that happens

in the year 2089.

Waieed: What do the Bills do?

Ramy : They do all human's

. Some Bills were

other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were

4 cars.

Waleed : Oh! What an easy life!





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

making - shocked - fixing - ironing - koshari

The Bills robots do the chores normally. In Australia, some Bills were clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly milkshakes, and others were cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. One family in Alexandria was when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. But Bill said nothing.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Luckity Sadty Awitaly), a computer engineer fixed the problem.
- 2. I (solved broke down pregrammed) the robot to fix my car and change the battery in it.
- 3. My mom is going to (m.ke do hx) koshari for lunch.
- 4. My father's car broke down. He wanted to (Iron solve fix) it to go to work.
- 5. We use the (battery microwave light) to heat food.
- 6. You have to (nest wear fill) the car with gas to go to work.
- 7. I like to make a (mikspake pattery koshari) using a blender.
- 8. We usually (heat roct item) clothes before wearing them.
- 9. We need to (charge iron program) the car battery. It broke down.
- 10. To (wear solve heat) food, we can use the microwave.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. a Bill What do does?
- Dill White do dodd:
- 2. important were The Bills people the to.



- 3. All the down suddenly broke Bills.
- 4. sweet is Earth on Life!
- 1
- 5. do The Bill robots chores the all.
- 6. Bill programmed | my car fix to.
- 7. do to going I am What?
- 8. to use learned the microwave Mom how.

Write an email to your friend Hagar:

Tell her about a story you read called "The Day The Bills Broke Down". It happened in the year 2089. It was about robots and how they will do all the chores for humans in the future. Your email address is omnia@school.net, and your friend's email address is hagar@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:



Lesson & Language

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



chores الأعمال (المُهَام) المنزلية



mop up the water عَجَدُهُ الماء - يمسح الماء /



hang up the clothes ِ يُعَلِّقُ الملابس



pick up the books المنفط الكتب (يرفعها من على الأرض).



clean up the kitchen) لَيُنْظُفُ المطبخ



tidy up the room يُرَتِّب الغرفة /



put out the garbage / يُذْرِج القمامة



put away the dishes يضع الأطباق في مكانها المعتاد

Entre Unantuality		CHINA CHETA	
response	رّد - إجابة	garbage can	صندوق القمامة
dining table	طاولة الطعام	dirty	مُثْسِخ - فذر
messy	فوضوي - غير مُرَثِّب	floor	أرضيةالغرفة
full (adj)	ممتلما	shelf	कु

Grammar Study Et



A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

ا المقصود بمصطلح الـ (phrasol verb) هو الفعل المتبوع بحرف جر. (المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح المقصود المقصود بمصطلح الله المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الـ (المقصود بمصطلح الـ المقصود بمصطلح الله المقصود المق

ايكتني ب المحدث عن كلمة في قاموس المحدث عن المحدث عن كلمة في قاموس المحدث عن المحدث المحدث

put out	ئىدۇد - يىطفىئ put on	يرتدي
put away	put o:۴ معتاد الشيء في مكانه المعتاد	يُؤْجُل

- Mom asked me to put away the dishes after washing them up.
- Sarah looks after her little sister when her mom is out.

Regular verbs قمطنال منتظمة

			The second secon
offer	يغرِض	offered	offered
pick up	بلتقط	picked up	picked up
clean up	يُنَظُف	cleaned up	cleaned up
mop up	يُجَمِّمُ - يمسح	mopped up	mopped up
tidy up	بُرْنَاب	tidied up	tidied up

put away في مكانه المعتاد	يضع الشيء	put away	put away
hang up	يُغَلِّق	hung up	hung up
do	يفعل	did	done

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Saif : I think we need to clean up the house.

Omar : OK. I'll mop up the water on the floor. Can you put •

the dishes?

Yes, of course. Can you

....... up the books

and put them on the shelf, please?

your bedroom will look better.

Saif That's right. I will also o up my room.

Choose the correct answer:

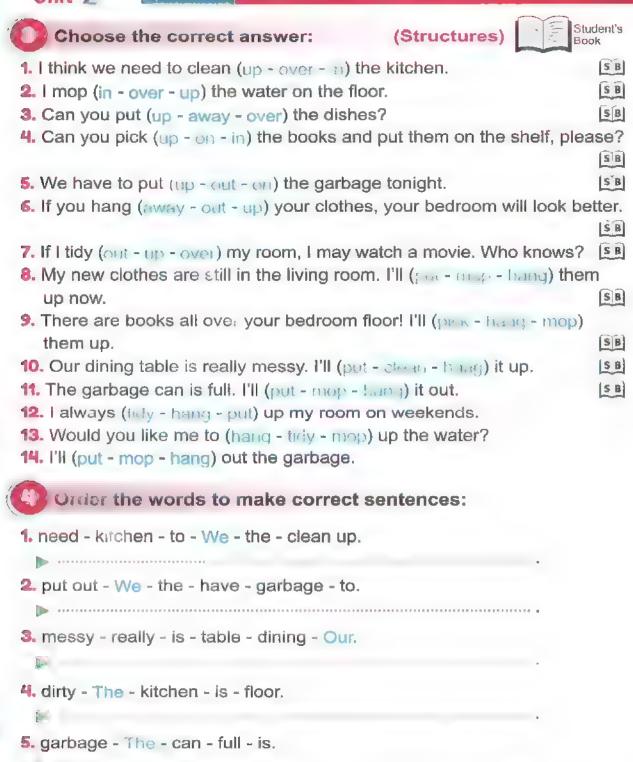
(Vocabulary)

- 1. Mom mops up the (+ Added took) on the floor.
- 2. My sister hangs up the (-) after washing them.
- 3. Mustafa picks up the (-) and puts them on the shelf.
- 4. Mom always cleans up the (). It's her favorite room.
- 5. The children tidy up their (). They are helpful.
- 6. I put out the (roon gardeness) when mom asks me.
- 7. She puts away the (-) after washing them.

Connect Plus 6-

93

94



Step Ahead

7. the - put - garbage - I'll - out.

3. weekends - I - my room - tidy up - on - always.

9. dishes - the - put - you - away - Can?

10. juice - is - There - the - on - floor.

Write an email to your friend Salma:

Tell her about the chores you and your family do every weekend.

Your email address is marwa@gmail.com, and your friend's email is salma@yahoo.com.

From.

To.

Subject:

Lesson 6 Writing an Instructional guide

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



attention مام، - انتباه (اهتمام)



stroke يَرْبُت - يُدلُك



sharpen ريسنَ (يجعل الشربِ عادًا)



collar độp



ا, مخالب

claws



furry غو فرو—مكسو بالفرو /



vaccinations تطعیمات



treatment علاد إ

Extra Vocabulary

instructional guide	دليل إرشادي	equipment	مُعِدِّات - أُدوات
vet	طبيب بيطري	scratch post (میم اهان	عمود خَذش (تخدش القطط مذ
back	طَهْر	leather	خاد
chin	ذمّن	turtle	سلحفاة
neck	رضبة	soil	ئرپة
couch	كنىة - أريكة	heat lamp	مصباح تدفئة - مصباح حراري
meals	وجبات	temperature	درجة الحرارة

Adjectives

wooden pole	عمود څشبي	warm	دافما
hard floor	أرضية صلبة	comfortable	مُريح
soft hair	شعر ناعم	at different times	في أومّات مختلفة



96

Step Ahead

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

stroke	يَرْبُن يُدلِّك	stroked	stroked
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
look after	تعيبۍ د	looked after	looked after
care for	ו זאַזועה ל	cared for	cared for

Arregular verbs أمعال غير صناطمه

		The state of the s	
sleep	رملنيا	slept	slept
feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
bring home	يجلب للبيت	brought home	brought home
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
get lost	يضل الطريق - يتوه	got lost	got (gotten) lost
get sick	يمرض	got sick	got (gotten) sick

Timbel Hyd Day Le

How can I make my can teel at home?

olive your cat lots of attention o so it اهتمام-التباء o feels safe. You should stroke 9 it. This means that you should move your hand over its back o, or under its chin o cats love this!

و يرزي -- پُدلك

الله اللها و دهن

🗗 كنية أربكة



Where do cats like sleeping?

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch ! Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day!

What do cats eat?

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

What equipment does a cat need?



و عمود خَذْش (تخدش القطط مخالبها فيه)

المراثب عمود 🕢

السنّ مخاليها (تجعلها جادة)

و طوق

🕡 🏻 يضل الطريق - يتوه

מאדה וויקלעה 🕕

📵 تطعیمات

📵 يَحْرَض - المَرَض

و مرو · مکسو بالمرو بالمرو

also like toys to play with. A collar o with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost o, somebody can bring it home to you.

A cat needs a scratch post 6. This is a strong wooden

pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats

How often should cats go to the vet?

Cats should go to the vet once a year for vaccinations . These stop them from getting sick . If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life!

Caring for your turtle

What do turtles eat?

- These animals like to eat flowers and plants.

You can also buy special turtle food

.



How can I make my turtle feel at home?

- Turtles need a very large space of for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil of to dig in o, too.

🕕 علمام سلاحف

و مساحة

المناسق 🚯

What equipment do turtles need?

- They sometimes need a heat lamp . This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

4 يحفر في 5 مصباح تدفئة

و درجة الحرارة

Where do turtles sleep?

- Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature of doesn't change.



Use definitions to explain what you mean

- When we are writing, we can use "This is", or "This means that" to explain words to the reader.
- Use "This is" before a noun phrase, for example:
 - A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.
- Use "This means that" before a full sentence with a subject and a verb:
 - ► Stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back or under its chin cats love this!

Activity Book Text

Estable recebal avey vet gaines

Where can I buy an indoor plant?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden, centers. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

أين يمكنني أن أشتري نبات يلمو داخل المنزل؟

يمكنك شراء النباتات التـي ننمـو داخـل المحرل مـن السـوبر ماركـت ومحـال الـزهـور ومراكـز الحدائق. تلك هـى محـلات تبيع العديد من النباتات المختلفة. ربما من الأفضل أن تشترب من مركـز الحديمـة لأن البائعيـن هنـاك يعرمـون كيفيـة الاعتناء بالنباتات ويسنطيعون أن يقدمـوا لك بعـض النصائـح المفيـدة. تأكـد أنـك بعـرف اسـم نـوع ببابـك لتستطيع معرفـة المزيـد عنـه.

Where should I put my indoor plant?

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.



أين يجب أن أضع النبات الذب ينمو داخل منزلي؟

بعض النباتات تحناج أن يكـون فـي مـكان دامـث ومشـمس بـه الكثيـر مـن الضـوء بينمـا تُ<mark>مضـل نباتات أخـري مكان لنباتك. معظـم، نباتات أخـري مكان لنباتك. معظـم، النباتات لا تحـب أن تحركهـا. لذلـك قـم بإيجـاد أفضـل مكان واتركهـا هنـاك.</mark>

Do plants need food?

Yes! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully, because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

هل تحتاج النباتات للطعام؟

نعم! أمصل وقت لإطعام نباتك هو مما مصل الربيع والصيف. فم بإطعامها بالأسمدة. السماد هو طعام مميز للنباتات، اقرأ النعليمات نحذر لأن الكثير من السماد يمكن أن بكون ضار بالنبات.

How often should I water the plant?

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

كم مرة يجب أن أسمَى النبات؟

بعض النباتات لا بحتاج الكثير من المياه سنما تصاح أخري لمياه أكثر. يمكنك البحث على الانترنت للحصول على معلومان أكثر. إذا لم تكن تعرف، من الأفضل أن تعطي النبات القليل جدا من المياه وليس الكثير جدا من المياه.

How should I clean my indoor plant?

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

كيف يجب أن أنظف النبات المزروع في منزلي؟

استخدم فرشاة ناعمة أو قطعة فماش قطييه لنزيل الغيار من أوراق النيات. مما يعني أيك تنظف القاذورات الحامه من الأوراق. قم برش الببايات دات الأوراق السميكة بالمياه فذلك سيحافظ عليهم بصحة حيدة.

Did you know?

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

هل تعلم؟

إذا حافظت على نباتاتك سعيدة وبصحة جيدة، سوف تعيش لعدة سنوات.



Step Ahead

Exercises on Lussen 6



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

space - lamp - safe - Turtles - dig

Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.

need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger
! They need clean soil to
in, too. They sometimes need a heat
. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hazem : Hello, Abduilah! I have a new cat. How can I make my cat

feel at home?

Abdullah : Hello, Hazem! Give your cat lots ofso it feels

safe. Cats love to be safe!

Hazem: What equipment does a cat need?

Abdullah : A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole

which the cat canits claws on.

: How often should cats go to the 6 ?

Abduilah : Cats should go to the vet once a year.

Hazem: Why should they go to the vet once a year?

Abdullah : To have • . . . to stop them from getting sick.



collar - This - claws - sharpen - vaccinations

A cat needs a scratch post.

is a strong wooden pole which the cat can

its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A

with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you. Cats should go to the vet once a year for

. These stop them from getting sick.

Choose the correct answer:



- 1. Your cat needs a vaccination. (This means that This is) a treatment from the vet to stop it getting sick.
- 2. Cats are very furry. (This means that This is) they have a lot of soft hair.
- 3. Cats need attention. (This means that This is) they need their owners to be interested in them.
- 4. You should buy your cat a collar. (This means that This is) a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck.
- 5. A cat needs a scratch post. (This means that ... This is) a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.
- 6. You should stroke your cat. (This means that This is) you should move your hand over its back or under its chin cats love this!

Or the words to make correct sentences:

1. . Where - sleep - turtles?

2 equipment - What - a - does - need - cat?

102 Step Ahea

- 3. go should every year to Cats the vet.

- 4. like comfortable a warm, Cats bed.
- 5. scratch needs a A cat post.
- 6. like Cats to toys with play.
- 7. cats the vet How often go to should?
- 8. like flowers to eat Turtles and plants.
- like nowers to eat Turties and plants.
- 9. eat do What turtles?
- 10. turtles need do What equipment?
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"Caring for your turtles"

clean soil - heat lamp - warm - sleep - safe





Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



feet curious ر يشعر بالفضول



spare room عرمة إصامية - غرمة احتياصيه إ



bricks ؛ طوب



stone / حدارة - حجر



shocked , مصدوم



great-grander t. / الجدة الكبرى



/ ذكريات رائعة



: / الطفولة



on school vacatio	في العُطلة المدرسية م	reel bored	إيشعر بالملل
at home	في المنزل	undern	تحت – أسفل
one morning	في صباح أحد الأيام	birthday card	بطاقة عبد ميلاد
kitten	مُطِنُ صغيرة	- reside (Indeed Ind	نادب عليهما ليىزلا الأسمل
hole		growing up	النشأة
wall	حائط	in a child	بخط طمل

Adjection

special	bored خاص	شاعر بالملل
interesting history	different color تاريخ مثير للاهتمام	لون مختلف
dangerous	glad حطیر	سعید - مسرور



Conjugation of verbs

Ragulanvarba

	woodatas de	in the second section	Cancolidana.
jump off	يقفز من على	jumped off	jumped off
pull	يجز - يسحب	pulled	pulled
look	يىدو - ينظر	looked	looked
guess	يخمن ؍ 💮	guessed	guessed
live	يعيش	lived	lived

irregular verbs adding his disal

·	The state of the s		No. of the Contract of the Con
put	يضع	put	put
find	774	found	found
build	ruiti	built	built
tell	، پُخبر	told *	told
hear	قست	heard	heard
feel	يشعر - يحس	felt	felt
run	يخرث	ran	run
go up	, zeni	went up	gone up
grow up	یکبر - ینشأ - یتربی	grew up	grown up

Definitions Aleger SB student's pook

brick : a small block for building

curious : interested, feeling you want to know more

great-grandmother: the mother of your grandparent

shocked : very surprised

spare: a room that is used for visitors or to put things in



Read and learn

The special house

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation • at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten •. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off • the chair and ran through a small hole • in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper — it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very curious •. The next day, it was raining. Sameh

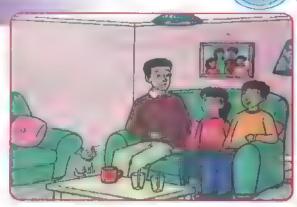
bored.
"Let's go up and look in the spare room o," Sameh said.

and his sister, Nadine, were feeling

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll . The doll was beautiful, and underneath , there was a birthday card: To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma.

Just then, their Dad called them downstairs .

"Dad!" said Sameh. "Who is Monira?". Dad looked shocked ...



🛈 - غطلة مدرسية ا

ಿ ಕ್ರಡಿ ಕ್ರಾಪ್ತಿಕ್ಕ್ 🕘

📵 يقفز من عنس)

ريمغرة - مُتحَقَ

قرفة إضافية غرفة احتياطيا

المضلّ - السفل ا

Humphy

🕒 والجدة الكيرميا

🐠 معدومي

🛈 طوب

😉 للأسقل - للطابق

Colorido 6

🕝 🗟 مية 🤄

"Why are you asking that?" he said.

"Look at this doll and this card!" replied Sameh.

"I don't believe it!" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s. My

grandma – your great-grandmother

Ived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

"Wow! Do you think the house was very small for them?" said Nadine.

"Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms!"



IN

"Do you think they were happy?" asked Sameh.

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

"But is the house different now?" asked Nadine.

"Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here too."

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is!" said Sameh.

"Well, you already know her," said Dad. "Monira was your

great-grandmother

ه سعید - مسرور

لأكريات 🚇

— Granddad's mom! | guess ⊌ you have

الكِّمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحُمْنِ الْحَمْنِ الْحَمْنِ الْحَمْنِ

never heard her first

طفولة 🎉

name before.

The things that you found are from her childhood . I'm so happy we have them! Thank you two!"

Intribution Lesson

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

curious - hole - vacation - spare - bricks

Sameh and Nadine were on school at home with their parents. That old house was built from and stone. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper. It was your old. It was a message. Sameh felt very

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. When someone is (curious - shocked - bored), this means they are interested, feeling they want to know more.



2. A (brick - spare - wall) is a small block for building.

And Andrews of the State of the

- 5. The () room is a room that is used for visitors or to put things in.
- 6. This house was built from (1, 100ms paper) and stone.

- 9. We have a (- -) room in our house to put old things in.
- Our grandpa always tells us about many of his (memories bricks He has been to so many interesting places.
- 12. Mom tells us that her (- midhood job) was happy. She was very happy when she was a child.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. the message is What story the of?
- ?
- 2. curious very felt Sameh.
- 3. beautiful doll - was.

- 4. happy you Do they were think?
 - ?
- 5. card was a There birthday.
- 6. the wall in a message found Sameh
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"The history of your force year "

- Ideas to help you.
- how old your home is.
- who has lived there.
- how your home has changed.



- Unit 2 Test 2



نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. Selim's father bought a new (garden apartment villa house).
- 2. They moved the new apartment last (week month year day).
- 3. Selim's (bedroom living room "dining room kitchen) is very comfortable and light.
- 4. Selim loves (playing " watching " moving " swapping) comic books.

Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- ₁ What did Stephen Pop wski invent in 1922?
- 2. What did he use his invention to?
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

electricity - appliances - electric - lighting - dark

Our We need lights in the evening. We can use it in our kitchens.

Blend refrigerators and kettles are all which need to work. We also use electricity in transportation.

Some people have cars. Bus stations and airports need electricity, too

Read the following text and answer the questions:

(4Ms)

It's hard to believe that only just over a century ago, there was no electric light to switch on. People used candles, gas and oil lamps to light their homes, and to work and study.

The electric light bulb was invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison. He invented many other useful things, but the electric light bulb was the most important. He also invented things that helped other people develop their own inventions.



110

Step Ahead

Edison was a clever inventor. However, when he was a child, his teachers thought he was stupid because he asked too many questions. His mother said that he didn't ask questions because he was stupid, but because he wanted to know how things worked. She taught him at home. Edison worked so hard day and night that we owed him a lot until now.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Edison learned from his (teachers mother father grandma).
- 2. The underlined word "century" means (1000 years 100 years 10 years 50 years).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. What's Edison's most important invention?
 - 4. Find from the passage the opposite of: intelligent turn off.

The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):	(4	lMs)
1. Mayar's parents didn't learn to read in braille.	()
2. The boots in the trunk were muddy.	()
Answer the following questions:		

- 3. Where did Asser put the school bags?
- 4. What did Mayar listen to in the car?





Choose the correct answer:

(6Ma)

- 1. If my hair (get gets getting got) wet, I'll use the hairdryer.
- 2. (Vaccine Smoothie Invention Milkshake) is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
- 3. You have to put (up out in on) the garbage today.
- 4. My favorite musical instrument is the (chess film movie violin).
- 5. Cats need attention. This means (this that these those) they need their owners to be interested in them.
- 6. If she hurries, she (catch would catch may catch could catch) the train.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

(2Ms)

- 4 down robots The broke yesterday.
 - ··
- 2 the mop up you Could juice, please?

?



Write an email to your friend Ola:

(4M5)

Tell her about a pet shop you have been to. You wanted to buy a pet or more. Tell her what the seller told you about how to care for your pet. Your email address is lana@email.com. Your friend's email address is ola@email.com.

From:

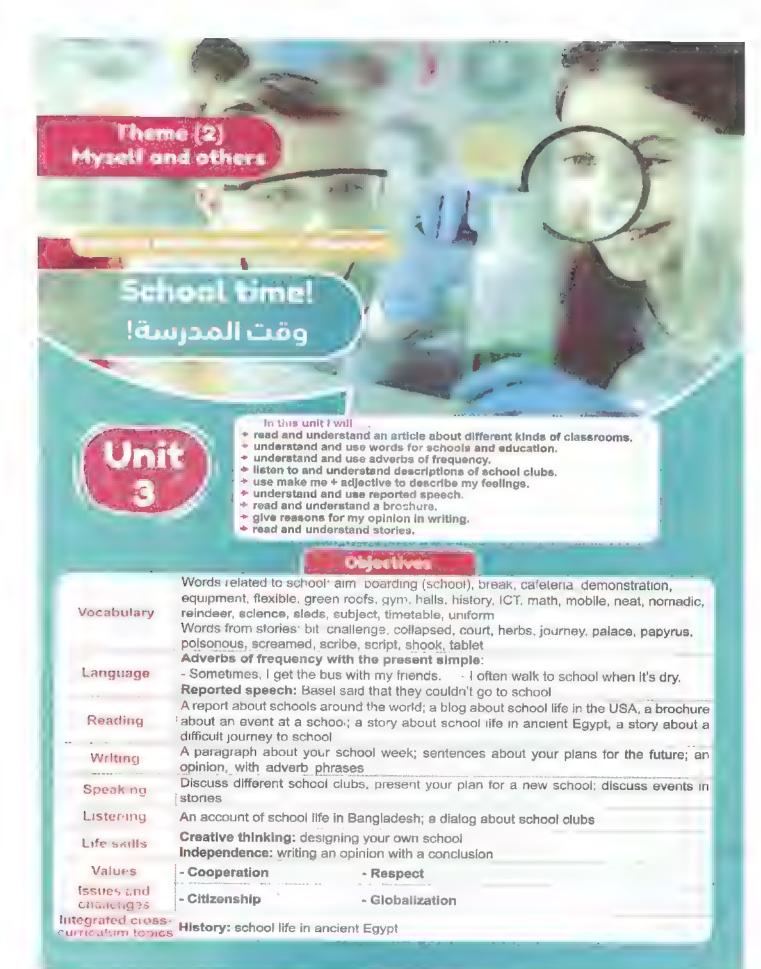
To.

Subject



112

→ Step Ahead



Lesson Different classroom



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



boarding school مدرسة داحلية



green roofs أَسُطُح خضراء



nomadic بدوی - رخال



sleds زلاجات / زلاجات



reindeer الرَّنَّة (حيوان قطبي يشبه الغزالة)



timetable جدول زمني -/جدول مواعید



outdoor places / أماكن مفتوحة



classrooms on the move فصول متحركة



education تعلیم



mobile rooms غُرِف مینفلت





Entre Vo	imbalar j	ne î		
	Location	II ft	an arbitrary	

Northern Siberia	شمال سيبيريا	nature	طبيعة
snowy land	أراضي ثلجية	environment	بيئة
frozen land	أراضي متجمدة	weather	طقس
ice	ثلج	dry	ر جاف



Lesson 1

tunt	خيمة	project	مشروع
roof garden	حديقة سطح	culture	ثقافة
desi	تختة - مكتپ	traditional skills	المهارات التقليدية
in the shade	فى الظِل	computing	مادة الحاسب الآلى
space	مساحة	chores	الأعمال (المَهام) المنزلية
wheels	عجلات	schedule	جدول
calm	هادمهٔ - ساکن	idea	، مكرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs مصطمة

		Pasi	
look after	أهيبة أ	looked after	looked after
clean	يُنْظُف	cleaned	cleaned
plant	يززع	planted	planted
learn about	يعرف عن - يعلم عن	learned (learnt) about	learned (learnt) about
help	عداسيا	helped	helped
cool	أيُبْرِّد - يجعلت باردًا	cooled	cooled
travel	يساغز	traveled	traveled
live	يعيش ِ	lived	lived
circle	يضع دائرة حول	circled	circled
study	يدرُس – يذاكر	studied	studied

hriegister verbs

	President Company		
bring	يْدْضِر	brought	brought
mean	تعبنی بقمد	meant	meant
teach	يُذرِّس - يُعَلِّم	taught	taught

Connect Plus 6 -

The second secon			1	7
think	גטצן - גאומר	thought	thought	
build	win	built	built	
sleep	بمام	slept	slept	
grow	پېمو - بررع	grew	grown	

Definitions Alegen S B Student's

boarding school: a school where children live and only go home at

vacation times

flexible : can change easily

mobile : can move

subject: a topic that you study at school, for example, math,

English, history, science

timetable : a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it



Classrooms are not the same in every school.

Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

Classrooms on the roof!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof • of the school!



The Shagara at School project @ designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt.

Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.



🛈 بنبطح

و مشروع

ताक्षा 🚯

🗗 مُب الهواء الطلق

🗗 شمال سبيريا ا جُنِم حيام

بالخارج

🕜 بدومی – رخال

Clistic (8)

و الأراضي المبحمدة

🐌 الرثة (ديوار، خطر نشيه العرال)

🕦 قدرسة داخلية

🕩 تعیدین عن

🚯 المهارات الثمليدية

فافييو بوزد ك

dre - ullne 13

oleo Iteluus Mary

תו בבפט רממט

الآيا شرن

📵 ।प्रकारी (सक्ताक) المترلية

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade a, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor o places make us calm and healthy - and that is great for learning.

Classrooms on the move!

In Northern Siberia 6, some students have their lessons in tents 6 on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic . This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds @ across the frozer land 9 and sleep in tents. They look after reindeer @ and take them to where there is food. So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to warding sthoot or. These children are away

from & their families for many months vear. They can't learn every traditional skills & from their parents. and they often forget their culture's language. The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms & on wheels . The children study school subjects like



math, science, and computing ... However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable to is flexible to, so they can help their families with the chores . At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!

Did you know?

مل انمام ا

There are 787 million children in the world who are old enough to go to elementary school. That's a lot of classes!

هناك 787 مليون طفل فب العالم بلعوا سِن الدهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية. وهذا العدد سَيَشْغَل الكثير من الفهول.

Exercises on Lesson I



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

boarding – reindeer – sleds – nomadic – tents

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in 0 Many people in the North of Siberia are @ . This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in 6 across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after o and take them to where there is food.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

: Do you know that some classes have their lessons in a Mazen garden on the roof of the school?

Salem : Yes, they are called green 0

: 2 is a green roof? Mazen

: Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. Salem

: How can roof gardens help students in city schools? Mazen

: They are great for the 6 Salem

Mazen : Why are green roofs good for the environment?

into the city. They also clean Salem : They bring 4 and cool the air.

Mazen : Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy -- and that is great for learning.

118 Step Ahead

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

timetable – subjects – nomadic – reindeer – skills

At o school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. The children study school o like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional of is flexible, so they can help their families with the chores.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Green – environment – roofs – designs – nature

in Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green for schools in Egypt. roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. A (mobile boarding flexible) room means it can move.
- When something is (boarding flexible mobile). This means it can change easily.
- 3. A (subject mobile timetable) is a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it.
- 4. A (subject boarding timetable) school is a school where children live and only go home at vacation times.
- 5. A (timetable mobile subject) is a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, science.

Connect Plus 6 -

119

- 6. Math, science, and computing are school (timesable) * subjects).
- 7. The timetable is (bearding flex.ble mobile), so they can help their families with the chores.
- 8. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or (no. e !) rooms on wheels.
- 9. Some children go away to (Subject boarding to co...) school. They are away from their families for many months every year.
- 10. They travel in (timetables subjects steds) across the frozen land and sleep in tents.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

In 2017, classes at one school in Egypt started a new project. They wanted to go to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants. Roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

0

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. People at the project thought this was an (\cdots \cdots - -) idea.
- 2. The desks are in the (room hall shade), but there are no walls.



Answer these questions:

- 3. What happened in 2017?
- 4. How are green outdoor places useful?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. roof - green - a - is - What?

?

2. nomadic - are - What - people?

,?

3.you - Would - to - like - Siberia - visit?

4. roofs - Green - great - are - the environment - for.

5. is - a - nomadic - What - school?

6. the children - do - education - How - get - an?

?

7. don't - people - Nomadic - one place - In - live.

8. reindeer - after - look - people - Nomadic.

Dan .

9. are - the - children - Why - happy - the nomadic school - at?

10. can - How - help - roof gardens - in city schools - students?

Lesson 2

Language



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



مادة تكنولوجيا رالمعلومات والاتصالات



school uniform ' زی مدرسی



neat ِ أَنيق - مُرَنَّب



كافتيريا - مطعم

Extra Vocabulary

kindergarten

rule (n) حضانة - رياض أطفال

قاعدة

middle school

school day المدرسة الإعدادية

یوم مدرسی - یوم دراسی

grade

school trip سنة دراسية - صف دراسي

رحلة مدرسية



play	تلعن	played	played
start	ايدا	started	started
finish	ينتهي - يُنهي	finished	finished
walk to	يمشي إلى	walked to	walked to
pick up	يُقِلُ - ينقل (شخص لمكان)	picked up	picked up
use	یستخدم - یستعمل	used	used
cycle	. يركب دراجة	cycled	cycled
tidy up	يُرَتِّب - يُنَظُّم	tidied up	tidied up



122

Step Ahead

أمعال غير منتظمه Irregular verbs

	The second		
read	ימرוֹ	read	read
bring	يُحْصِر	brought	brought
eat	ىأكل	ate	eaten
take	يأخذ - يستغرق	took	taken

Definitions Physics S B Sudent's

cufeteria : a place where students e at lunch

: a subject where you study and use computers

neat: clean and tidy, not messy or dirty

school uniform: clothes that are the same for every student



How does Lilly go to school?

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects , like ICT o. I like using computers!

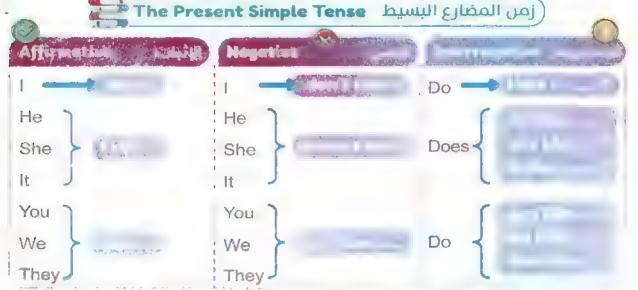
We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform a, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.



- 🛈 المدرسة الإعدادية
 - و حضانة رياص أطمال
 - 📵 مواد دراسیه
 - مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والأتطالات
 - اَيْدى 🕣
 - اربيّ مدرسي



Crammar Suny LE



- Me use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.
 - ◄ يُستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.
- O I my cousins every week. O He usually to school by bus.

Adverbs of frequency

ظروف النكرار

- We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens. They can help to describe habits or routines.
- يمكننا استخدام ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنفول كم عدد مرات نكرار حدوث شيء ما.
 يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوب، ميل:

always 100 %

Lilly alway gets the bus with her friends.

usually 80 %

Lusually cycle to school.

often 60 %

Aban often walks or cycles to school.

sometimes 30 %

Lilly sometimes brings lunch from home.

never o %

Lilly never walks to school.

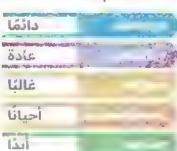
124

Losda notes

■ We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).

تُستخدم هذه الكلمات فبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

- O I always wear my uniform on a school day.
- OI usually bring lunch from home.
- O She often walks to school.
- My desk is neat, but not always.
- O l am never late for school.







Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

neat - school - cafeteria - uniform - sometimes

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I'm in Grade 6. We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school . but my clothes and shoes have to be . I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I . get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the . or outside in summer.



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

: Hi, my name's Lilly, and I am from the USA. What's your name?

Aban : Hi, Lilly! I am Aban, from Bangladesh.

Lilly : I go to middle school, and I'm in Grade 6. What about you?

Aban : I'm in Grade 6, too.

Lifty: I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes

have to be 0

... I wear my school e every school day. It's a school

rule.

Lilly : I sometimes get the bus with my friends.

: I often 6 or cycle to school.

Liliv

Aban

. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home.

I eat in the

Aban

: I have lunch in the cafeteria, too.

Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)

- 1. (ICT CD PE) is a subject where you study and use computers.
- 2. The word (busy neat worned) means clean and tidy, not messy or dirty.
- 3. The school (uniform shoes bag) is clothes that are the same for every student.
- 4. A (cafeteria museum library) is a place where students eat lunch.
- 5. We do more interesting subjects, like (PE PHD ICT). I like using computers!
- 6. I'm always clean. My clothes and shoes have to be (messy neat dirty).
- 7. I wear my school (uniform bus subjects) every school day. It's a school rule.
- 8. I tidy up my desk a lot to keep it (dirty messy neat).
- I have sandwiches in the (apartment cafeteria bus). It's a building in my school.
- 10. I'm in (grade number school) six. Next year, I will be in middle school.

Choose the correct answer:

(Structures)

- I don't have a bike. I walk to school. I (never always usually) cycle to school.
- I wear my school uniform every school day. It's a school rule. I (never always - usually) wear my uniform on a school day.
- We go on school trips to museums once or twice a year. We (never don't - sometimes) go on school trips.
- 4. On most days of the week, I have sandwiches in the cafeteria. My lunch is (never always usually) a sandwich in the cafeteria.
- I tidy up my desk a lot to keep it neat, but sometimes it is messy. My desk is (never - always - often) neat, but not always.



- 6. We (going to 3) goes) to school from Sunday to Thursday.
- 7. School (starts start in starting) at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm.
- 8. We (are having has have) an hour for lunch.
- 9. I (often walks often walks with often) to school when it's dry and sunny.
- 10. How does Lilly (go goes going) to school?
- 11. I (bring usually usually brings) lunch from home.
- 12. He often (cy des cycles cycles) or takes the bus.
- 13. Lilly (son etimes cue the crietines sometimes brings) lunch from home.
- 14. Aban (often walk walk for the chen walks) or cycles to school.
- 15. From June to October, it (compared sometimes is are sometimes) rainy in Bangladesh.
- 16. There (is always al. b are always) floods in Bangladesh.
- 17. I (never am never never am) late for school.
- 18. She (often walk Port and k walks often) to school.
- 19. Lilly (gets always - - wa, e get) the bus with her friends.
- 20. How many days (-) Aban go to school every week?
- 21. | (visit sometimes recommendation on Friday.
- 22. Lilly (never walk = 140. . walks never) to school.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. in 6 I'm Grade.
- 2- Aban does How school to go?
- 3. go I to school middle.
- 4. How many every week days study Aban does?

~ ·······?

- 5. from to Thursday to school We Sunday go.
- 6. sometimes I the bus get my friends with.
- 7. lunch for hour an have We.
- 8. bring usually I home from lunch.
- 9. school to go Lilly does How?
- 10. my desk tidy up keep it ! to neat.



"My school week"



Lesson 3 Scheal tubi



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





football club رنادى كرة القده،



music club رنادي الموسيقي



swimming club) زنادی السباحة



art club نادب الفنون



competitions i terrific مسابقات - منافسات



terrific اررائع - مذهل



, and the same of		The same of the sa	
make me healthy	تخعربت نمحو ختدو	play (n)	مسرحية
make you relaxed (يجعلك مسترخيًا (مرتاحًا)	watching cartoons وم المنحركة	مشاهدة أفلاه الرسو
make me hungry	يجعلن ي ج ائعًا	mind	عقل - ذهن
playing music	عزْف الموسيقم	skill	مهارة
playing chess	يَعِب الشطرنج	Join our club.	التحق بنادينا.
friendly matches	مباريات ودية	early in the morning	في الصباح الباكر

Conjugation of verbil

Regular verbs معطمه

	Timerk		
enter	يَدْخُل	entered	entered
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
join	ينضم إلى - يلتحق بـ	joined	joined
paint	يطلى - يُلوِّن	painted	painted

irregular verbs منظمة

	CPresunt D		PP
shoot	يُسَدِّد الكرة	shot	shot
come	يئائري	came	come
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
meet	يقابل - يلتقى پ	met	met
make	يجعل	made	made ·

Read and learn

Art club!

Everyone knows that art is good for your mind. It makes you relaxed and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.

Tenne it tarrille

Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at



4 pm. Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!



Activity Book Text



Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!

ا رام الأصلاحي عنه الأولوب من التدرية كان عنها أن ترخص من التدرية كان عنها أن ترخص من التدرية كان عنها أن ترخص من التدرية وكان هذا طعنًا حد ممنا بعد التحريب ولكنة بنعيمت مرهمًا خدًا التحريب ولكنة بنائم التحريب ولكنة التحريب





Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

لقد قام أفراد ناديدا بنزهة في الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي، حينما كان معلمنا يشبر إلى شيء ما، كنا بلاقط صورة له، ولكن لم يكن بإمكاننا سوى التقاط صورة واحدة لذلك الشيء. لذلك كان علينا النظر بتدقيق وأن نَقْرُر أيل نقف. لقد كان الأمر ممنعًا وهذا ما جعندي متحمس لهذا الأمر. عندما قمنا بمعارنة الصور التيب التقطياها بعد ذلك، كانت الصور مختلفة تمامًا



Examilia en Lesson 📵



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

: Hi, Shady! Have you heard about the Art Club in the school? Hassan

: Hi, Hassan! Yes, and there are tennis classes, too. Shady

: Which club would you like to join? Hassan

: I think tennis is terrific! What about you? Shady

is a great sport, but I think : Oh. ves! 0 Hassan

everyone knows that art is also good for your mind.

: Why do you like art? Shady

me relaxed and happy. Come to the art Hassan

room to learn how to draw and paint.

: Thanks, but tennis makes me 6 Shady

Would you

..... our club to learn a new skill

and meet new people?

Choose the correct answer:



SB

SB

S B

SB

- 1. Playing music for my parents (make makes) me proud.
- Cooking club always makes (me I) hungry!
- 3. (Swimming Swim) makes me healthy and strong.
- 4. Sad plays and movies (make makes) me unhappy!
- My friends (make makes) me happy.
- (Run Running) makes me feel healthy.
- 7. Playing tennis makes (me I) feel healthy.
- 8. Running (make makes) me tired.
- Books make (me I) excited.
- 10. (Watching Watch) cartoons makes me bored.
- 11. My friends (make makes) me happy.
- 12. Art (make makes) you relaxed.
- 13. Tennis and football (make makes) you healthy!
- 14. (Eating Eat) unhealthy food makes you sick.
- 15. (Listening Listen) to music makes me feel relaxed.





Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hello! I'm Sherif. I've joined the Art Club at school. Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it, but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun, and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Sherif is in the (Music Club Swimming Club Art Club) at school.
- 2. They went for a (walk drive race) in the park.

B

Answer these questions:

- 3. When did the club go for a walk in the park?
- 4. What happened when they compared their photos later?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. doing are What children the?
- 2. shoot Children goals can.
- 3. and happy makes you Art relaxed.
- 4. makes Tennis you and happy healthy!
- 5. sport great a is Tennis.
- 6. and strong makes me Swimming healthy.
- 7. friends happy make My me.
- 6. feel makes healthy Running me.

Lenzon III Grean city school



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



Open Day اليوم المفتوح



principal مدير مدرسة



Eco-playground فِناء صديق للبيئة



i environmentally friendly · صديق للبيئة



demonstration عَرْض توضيحي

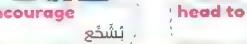


passionate about 🗸 شغوف بشأن



encourage

يَتَوَجَّه إلى





special	مُمَيَّز - استثبائب	tour	جولة
buildings	مبانى	electricity	الكهرباء
green space	مساحة خضراء	solar panel	لوحة طاقة شمسية
join us	انضم إلينا - إلْتحِقُ بنا	roof	شطح
schedule	جدول	recycling room	غرفة إعادة التدوير
presentation	عَزْض - تقديم	materials	مواد - مُعِدَّات



Lesson

the waste مُسار طبيعي - ذَرْب طبيعي المُعالِث المُعالِث المُعالِث المُعالِث المُعالِث السُّلُق مُسار طبيعي - ذَرْب طبيعي المُعالِث السُّلُق insects وعشرات موهّف سيارات (مكان لركن الدراجات) bike sheds غالبًا - في الغالب في الغالب

Definitions Planer's S B Student's Book

passionate : having strong feelings

principal: the person in charge of a school

demonstration: when you show other people how to do or make

something

encourage: persuade someone to do something by giving them

advice or support

Eco-playground: a playground that does not harm the environment

Conjugation of water

Regular verbs and in like

harm	يضر - يؤذي	harmed	harmed
head to	يتوجه إلى	headed to	headed to
sort	يمْرز - يُصَنَّف	sorted	sorted
arrive at	يصل إلى	arrived at	arrived at
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
encourage	يُشَدِّع	encouraged	encouraged

irregular verbs annua juc discil

San Marian Maria		- Joseph -	
see	ַניט	saw	seen
take place	يَحْدُث	took place	taken place





Green City School Open Day

At Green City School, we are passionate about 0 helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest @ school in the city!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open day schedule 8:

9 am New students and families arrive at the school

Presentation 4 by the principal 5

10 am Tour 6 of the school buildings

First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from on the roof

Then, we (3) the where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other و about how we قرص توصيحت و about how we materials. Watch a

ort the waste from our classrooms

& The After that, come and see our is made mostly with materials. There is also a nature trail around the

playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects

12 pm Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

1 pm Any questions? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers! There is a small car park, but we encourage by you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!



🚺 شغوف پشأن

🙆 الأخضر

و جدول

﴿ عَرْضِ – تقدیم

🕝 مدير المدرسة

ن جولة

🕜 لوجات طاقة شمسية

🔞 يتوجه إلى

👩 عرفة إعادة التحوير

🛈 يغرز – يُصَلَّف

😰 ملعب (حُوش) صديق للبيئة

🗗 إطار التُسَنُّق

🤦 مُعاد تدويرها

🗗 يُشجّع





If something is environmentally friendly, it does not harm the environment.

إذا كان الشيء صديمًا للبيئة، فهو لا يضر بها.



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Kareema: Hi, Ghada! Do you know that I go to the Green City School?

Ghada: Hi, Kareema! What is special about the Green . . .

Reportion and enti-

School?

Kareema: It is very environmentally friendly. It has a lot of green space.

Ghada . What does environmentally friendly mean?

Kareema : If something is environmentally friendly, it does not

2 the environment.

Ghada: How does it help the environment?

Kareema : At Green City School, we are 6 about

helping the environment. We have a new Green Library, too.

Ghada: Why is it called green?

Kareema : Because all its o comes from solar panels

on the roof.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

encourage - materials - grow - Eco-playground - trail

Come to Green City School and see our

. The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature

around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects. Enjoy a delicious lunch in our

School Garden, where we e our own flowers, fruit,

and vegetables. There is a small car park, but we o

you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. (Demonstration Presentation) means when you show other people how to do or make something.
- To (encourage enjoy) means to persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support.
- 3. (Environmentally friendly Eco-playground) is a playground that does not harm the environment.
- 4. The (principal police officer) is the person in charge of a school.
- When someone is (enjoyable passionate), they are having strong feelings.
- **6.** If something is (carefully hopefully environmentally) friendly, it does not harm the environment.
- 7. On the (Open Work School) Day, we play and enjoy.
- 8. At Green City School, we are (helpless passionate careless) about helping the environment.
- 9. There is a nature (trail mail tail) around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.
- 10. We can head to the (Cycling Recycling Bicycling) Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials.
- 11. We (recycle encourage arrive) you to walk or cycle. It's better for your body and for the environment.
- 12. Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we (grow eat cook) our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. waste sort classrooms We from our the.
- 2. is There trail a nature the playground around.
- 3. park car a small is There.

138

- 4. the Recycling Room can visitors What in see?
 - ?
- 5. School Garden a delicious in lunch Enjoy our.
- 6. students join New are us welcome to.
 - **▶**
- 7. does Where start tour the school?
- 8. trail nature the is Where?
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

 "Green buildings"

help - green space - grow - flowers, fruit, and vegetables - walk to - cycle - environmentally friendly - recycled materials - not harm - solar panels



Lessen F. Leyner



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



bridge / کوبر**ي - چ**سر



' **collapse** ' ینهار - یسقط



steep / شديد الانحدار



crash تَحَطُّه - انهيار / تَحَطُّه



repair یصلح - یُرمِّم



journey مرحلة برية طويلة ﴿



village square) / ساحة القرية



storm قفصاد ،

	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	The state of the s	
newspapers		broken (adj)	مكسور - مُحَطَّم
websit es	مواقع إلكترونية		يصل إلى البيت
مستيقظًا lie awake	يرقد مستيقظًا - بستلقى	will	تَّلّ
country	بلد - دولة	. It fee	حركة المرور
mountains	ڄِبال	surprise (n)	مفاجأة
all around it	حولها من كل مكان	w cost	يرتدي معطفًا أصفر
stores	متاجر - محلات	eventually	أخيرًا - وفي النهاية



140

→ Step Ahead

Lesson !

Prepositions		
listen to	ستمع إلى get on	يركب (مَرْكبَة)
point to	و يُشير إلى go راب	يَعْبُر
pick up	arrive at يلتقط – يأخذ	يصل إلى
look at	write about ينظر إلى	يكتب عن
come up	smile at أثشْرِق - تسطع	يبتسم إلى
get to	hearbout يصل إلى	ند عمسیا

أضمان ستحالت الأرباد إماليوه الم

Campagotlenelperin

	The Land		
last	يستمر - يدوم	lasted	lasted
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	listened to
walk to	ساإ يشميا	walked to	· walked to
point to	يُشير إلى	pointed to	pointed to
stay at	يبقب - يظلّ	stayed at	stayed at
pick up	يلتقط - يأخذ	picked up	picked up
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at	looked at
repair	يعلح - يُرَمُّم	repaired	repaired
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked	asked
smile at	صاإ مستبي	smiled at	smiled at
collapse	ينهار - يسقط	collapsed	collapsed
try	يحاول	tried	tried

	irregular verbs	ospuo fit ilis	ia)
	Tent 1	Fulle 3	
send	يُرسِل	sent	sent
hear about	يسمع عن	heard about	heard about
get to	يصل إلم	got to	got to
come up	اً تُشْرِق - تسطع	came up	come up
run to	يجري إلى	ran to	run to
lie awake	يستلقي مستيقظًا	lay awake	lain awake
drive	یقود (مَرْکَبَة)	drove	driven
go across	يَعْبُر	went across	gone across
write about	یکتب عن	wrote about	written about

The bridge to school

Lina ay awake •, listening to the wind and rain. The storm elasted all night. Then, as the sun came up •, she heard a crach •. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.



- عاصفة
- 📵 أشرقت الشمس

Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge o has collapsed!"

ثخطہ – انھیار
 کوبرٹ – جسر

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was smail, and had teep mountains o all around it. The bridge over the

👩 جِبالِ شديدة الانحدار

المركر الرياضي
 شاور على – أشار إلى ج

river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the المادية الماد

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

Lina's dad pointed to 6 the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school. "What are we going to do?" asked Lina.

They had to stay at home that day, and their teacher sent work for them to do online.



142

Step Ahead

The next morning, a school bus drove into the village square o."Look, Lina," said Sarah, "The bus is here!"

"The bus?" said Lina. "But it's such a long way by road!"

"I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah, picking up her bag and running to the door.

As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill & on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

The bus journey took two hours. It was not, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad.

🚇 ساحة القابية

THE CO

🛈 مواقع الكترولية

🗗 مفاجأة

Place - uniago

At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge. When she got home, she took photos.

Her teacher said that writing a letter for everyone to see was a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites u all over the country.

The next day, Lina and her friends took the bus to school. To their surprise . when they came home, they saw engineers and builders at the river. They smiled at the children.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly."

After a week, there was a new metal bridge.

"Well done, Lina," said Sarah. "Your letter helped everybody!"



Grammar Study



الكلام غير المباشر هو الكلام المنقول عن لسان شخص آخر.

The steps

- 🖶 خطوات تحويل التهنة من كاله في ترجي عبي 🕝 عياس
- We use reported speech when we tell someone what another person said.
 - 1. We use a reporting verb (said told).
 - 1. (said to) أحول المر (told) عربية المراجعة عربية المراجعة عربية
 - 2. We omit the quotation marks and the comma, and we can use the word "that" as a conjunction.
 - 2. بحذها الربع على المراجع بالمراجع المربع المربع على المربع على المربع على المربع المربع المربع على المربع المرب
 - 3. We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.
 - 3. تُحَوِّل الضمائر وصفات الملكية على حسب معنى الجملة.
 - 4. We change the tenses from present to past.
 - الم يُحوّل زمن الجملة من المصلح بعض الله من الله الله المسلم الم

present simple
present continuous
present perfect
will – can

past simple
past continuous
past perfect
would - could

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
1	he – she	you	I – we – they
me	him – her	you	me – us – them
my	his - her	your	my - our - their
we	they	am – is	was
us	them	are	were
our	their	has to - have to	had to



144

→ Step Ahead

Examples:

- Ahmed said, "I'm very tired."
 - Ahmed said that he was very tired.
- 🌎 Heba said to Nahla, "I visit my aunt every week."
 - Heba told Nahla that she visited her aunt every week.
- "I'm doing my homework," said Ashraf.
 - Ashraf said that he was doing his homework.
- "I finished my work," Amal said to her mother.
 - Amal told her mom that she had finished her work.
- "I will travel to Alexandria," said Samy.
 - Samy said that he would travel to Alexandria.
- Tamer and Amr said, "We can climb that tree."
 - Tamer and Amr said that they could climb that tree.
- She said "I walk with my friends"
 - She said she walked with her friends.
- She said "The bridge has collapsed!"
 - Lina said that the bridge had collapsed.

Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

steep - said - storm - broken - crash

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The 0. lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a 2 She ran to the window. Lina looked at the river near their house. She

said, "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had 10 mountains all around it. As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it 4

made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it.





Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Lina: I heard a crash, What was that?

Sarah : Sadly, the bridge has •! It's the storm.

Lina : Oh no! The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get

to the town.

Serial Mom she had just listened to the radio.

They said that the storm o stop soon.

Lina : I hope so.

Sarah : We couldn't go to town, or the school.

Lina: What are we going to do?

Salar Nothing. Our life would be different until someone

🗿 , , it



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

is - said - journey - bridge - was

The bus to school took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad. At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken.

When she got home, she took photos. Her teacher

• that writing a letter for everyone to see • a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try

to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites all over the country.



Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)

1. Something which is difficult to climb is (steep - deep).

SB

2. When you travel to get to a place, you go on (a river - a journey).

2. When you have to get to a place, you go on (2 mes a

S B

146

Step Ahead

3. If you fix something, you (break - repair) it.

- SB
- 4. If something (builds collapses), it falls down suddenly.
- SB
- Lina looked at the broken bridge. They needed someone to (break drive - repair) it.
- 6. The bus (square journey wheel) took two hours.
- 7. There was a (mountain hill bridge) to cross to the other side of the river.
- 8. The (rain storm snow) was very strong. The very strong wind made the bridge collapse.

Choose the correct answer:

(Structures)

- 1. Mom said she had just (listened listen) to the radio.
- 2. Sarah said that the bus (is was) here.
- 3. Sarah said that It (was is) the only thing they (can could) do.
- 4. He said they had (heard hear) about her letter.
- Lina said that the bridge (has is had) collapsed.
- 6. She said she (walk walked is walking) to school with her friends.
- 7. They said that the storm (would will can) stop soon.
- 8. Mom said that we (can could will) see what had happened.
- 9. A man in a yellow coat said they (were are) building a new bridge, so they (can - could) get to school quickly.
- 10. Sarah said her letter (had has is) helped everybody.
- 11. Mohamed said that he (were was is) coming.
- 12. Mustafa said that he (didn't hasn't hadn't) gone to the party.
- 13. Shahd said that he (worked works has worked) in a bank.
- 14. She said that Lucy (will was would) come later.
- 15. Alaa said that he (hasn't didn't hadn't) eaten breakfast.
- 16. Hazem said that he (is was were) talking to his friend on the phone.



- 17. Karam said that he had (visited visit visiting) his friends on the weekend.
- 18. Maher said that he (haven't hadn't wasn't) eaten sushi before.
- 19. Taqwa said that she (is doing was doing are doing) the washing-up.
- 20. Khalid said that he (would will does) go to the park next weekend.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. bridge did collapse When the?
 - ?
- 2. night all lasted storm The.
- kiel)(
- 3. just I've to listened radio the.
- 4. hours two took journey The bus.
- 5. the storm said that They soon stop would.
- 6. walked the river her family Lina to and.
- 7. do to going we are What?
- 8. bridge a new building We're.

Writing an opinion

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس







ا جربه المالية مدرسية مدرسية المالية ا المالية المالية



experiences خبرات - تجارب



real life الحياة الواقعية

Extra Vocabulary

interesting نتائج

مثير للاهتمام - مُشَوِّق

بانسا شهمة الساب

ممنع - مُسلَّتِ

brain

important مخ - عقل

രമാ - രമാ

الة - أداة

أغضل - أحسن

- HILLY - TALL

in my opinion پیرا راین

title من وجهة نظري - في رأيي

عنوان

first of all

introduction أُولاً - بدايةً

مقدمة

in addition بالإضافة إلى ذلك - علاوة على ذلك main ideas

alizi - nat Il il codrictioi

أفكار الرئيسية

finally

conclusion أخيرًا - مْي الأخير

خاتمة

to sum up

التلخيص - ولنوجز

Conjugation of Letter

Bagailes meth

		No. of the last of	
learn about	يتعلم عن	learned about	learned about
sum up	يُلخِّص	summed up	summed up
introduce	يُقَدِّم	introduced	introduced

Connect Plus 6+

. . . .

أمعال عبد منتظمة معالم عبد منتظمة

see	یری	saw	seen
understand	ര്മല്	understood	understood
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
give	ហុងនរ	gave	given
have fun	يستمتع	had fun	had fun

When you write about your opinion, you need to give reasons for it. In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons for your opinion, and use phrases to introduce each new reason. We use commas after these adverb phrases.

عندما تكتب عن رأيك، عليك أن تعطي أسبابًا لذلك الرأي.

من مقرات الأمكار الرئيسية، مم بإعظاء أسبات مختلفة لرأيك، واستخدم عباراتٍ لعرض كل سبب جديد، وتُستخدم الفواصل بعد هذه العبارات التي تحتوي على أحد الظروف

First of all, we can learn a lot ...

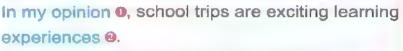
In addition, school trips are often more interesting than ...

Finally, we can continue learning when ...

Read and learn-

Are school trips important?

by Nesma, aged 12



First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life 3, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are



🛈 في رآيي 🐧 وجمة نظري

🛭 تجارب 📵 الحياة الواقعية



often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can التعليم وللوجز do a project about what we saw on the trip.

To sum up 6, school trips are a very important part of our education 6. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Activity Hard Lea

BSATUPE PROPERTY

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

أعتقد أن دراسه المادي من من المهم أن نفهم كيف ساهميا إلى من المهم أن نفهم كيف

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

بداية، بمكتنا أن تتعلم الكياب بين بينا عنا بينا عدنا التاريخ في فهم مجتمعنا والدضارات الأخرص لا بالبيرين الناب بينا فعلم، ونبعرَّف علم الفنانين والعلماء والسياسيين المهمير بين بين بين بين ومعادا تعيرت الحياة علم مر السنين.

Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

تمول بعض الناهر الي صور الصور مع كلامهم، فالتاريخ من البراحة والاستطاع المهمس، واختراً، بساعدنا التاريخ على المعمس واختراً، بساعدنا التاريخ على البلاغة على المستقبل المستقبل

In conclusion, I think that studying history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.

ت اعلت انعلَّم من

الماطيق كما أنيه نسب عضا عنيي عضم لمددا وخيما بنعبي الاستاء

Verm 1

Emerciaes on Lauson (6)





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



In addition - In my opinion - To sum up - Finally - First of all

, all children should learn music at school. , learning music is a good way to relax. , learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain. , learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we have to practice to get great results! , I think that we should learn more music in school.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Eman : Hello, Nesma! Do you think school trips are important?

Nesma : Hello, Eman! In my

, school trips are exciting

learning experiences.

Eman : Why do you think that?

Nesma : 9 of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new

places.

Eman : What else?

Nesma : In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only

reading about things in books or watching videos.

Eman : I see what you mean.

Nesma : 6 , we can continue learning when we are back

in the classroom after the school trip.

Eman: We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Nesma : That's right. To o up, school trips are a very

important part of our education.





Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

addition - sum - Finally - opinion - First

In my o	, school trips are exciting learning experiences.
9	of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. In
3 ,	. , school trips are often more interesting than only
reading about	things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue
learning when	we are back in the classroom after the school trip. To
3	up, school trips are a very important part of our education.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. In my (opinion addition), school trips are exciting learning experiences.
- 2. (Sum First) of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places.
- 3. In (addition sum), school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.
- 4. (Finally Opinion), we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip.
- 5. To (first sum up), school trips are a very important part of our education.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. important trips school Are?
- 2. school In addition, are trips interesting often.
- •
- 3. children All learn at school should Arabic.
- 4. a good clubs learn School way to are.

Term 1

Connect Plus 6-

153



- 5. subject useful most the is ICT.
- 6. the environment should at school about We learn.
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"ICT is the most useful subject."

school projects - lessons - internet - information - world language





Lesson 7

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



scribe ناسخ - کاتب



'scripts 'مخطوطات - نصوص,



palace



pharaoh's court بلاط الفر عول (مصر المرعون)



papyrus ورق البردب



wooden tablet , لوح خشبي



مصر

,**bite (٧) (n)** يلاغ - لاغة



scream (n) غراخ



`**shake** بھزّ - يرجّ



poisonous



shocked pgano



confused

FACTS NAMED IN	April 1		47.7		 A
El Carlo Minimum Carlo					
	-180				

main characters	شخصيات رئيسبة	sore	ئائى <u>ق</u> ى - شاقزچ
bright ·	កូចមាកា - ជប្រាំប្រា	kind of	لوع مال
comfortable	مريح	circles	دوائر - ملقات
herbs	بلشدأ	cloth	pilas asen
a bottle of oil	زجاجة زيت	for a while	لبعض الومت

start shouting	بدأ في الصراخ (الصياح)	get sick	يَمْرَض
rolls (n)	لقَاتَ - لمامَات	amased	مندهش - مذهول
notes	ملاحظات	work hard	يعمل بِحِدّ
studying the bo	oy's hend		رتمحص يد الولد

Compagnition of modes

Regular verbs معلنية العجال

The state of the s		The state of the s	The second second second second second
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	wanted
happen	يَحْدَث	happened	happened
jump up	يقفز الأعلى	jumped up	jumped up
push away	يدفع بعيدًا	pushed away	pushed away
scream	يصرخ	screamed	screamed
shout	تصتك	shouted	shouted
pour	يصت	poured	poured
يحزم أمتعته pack up	يجمع أشيائه -	packed up	packed up
work	يعمل	worked	worked
move across	يتحرك عبر	moved across	moved across
cry	تنكئ	cried	cried

Г		DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF THE		The Real Property lies and the last of the	The state of the s
	shake		يهزّ - يرجّ	shook	shaken
	hurt 🕝		يُؤنم	hurt	hurt
	get up		ىستىقظ	got up	got up
	leave		يترك	left	left

156

Step Ahead

		The state of the sail	
sit on	يجلس على	sat on	sat on
spend	يمْضِي (وقتًا)	spent	spent
go	يذهب	went	gone
know	जिष्टा - एवेडा	knew	known
bite	يلدغ يعضً	bit	bitten

	Definitions SB Student's Book
court	: This is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions.
herbs	: These are plants that people used in food or medicine.
papyrus	: This is a type of paper made from plants called reeds.
scribe	This is a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court
script	: This is a piece of paper with information written on it.
tablet	: In schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on this.



Read and learn

The doctor comes to school

Nebsin didn't want to get up 0. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. "Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing. "Why do I have to go to school?" he said. "Babu plays all day.



ں ہسیقظ

His life is easy!" "Babu will start school next year, yana 🕗 😝 ياسخ كاتب when he is seven," said his mom. "I'm going to 👅 بلاط الفرعون (مُصر لفرعون) و Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk (مُصر لفرعون) 🗗 محتار together." They left the house, His father was a 👩 لوح خشبی who spent all day writing about everything 🕜 بدأ في الصراخ (الصياح) that happened in the ... O. "Did you like 🔞 لَذَغِ – غَضَ school, Dad?" asked Nebsin, "Of course! I wanted 🥝 صَرَحَ 🕦 لفافات من ورق البردي to learn to read and write, like you are doing." 🕦 مخطوطات – نصوص "Why did you want to be a scribe?" "My father 📭 مُلْتُهِبِ – مُتَمَّرُ د was a scribe, and his father was a scribe. It's 📵 سام – مسموم an important job. You will know what you want العشاب 🖺 to be one day." Net sin was 🗗 صِبْ – شكّت didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the 🕜 قطعة قماش future. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his Suddenly, a boy jumped up and mer was shocked. "Sit down!" he said. "There's a snake!" somebody Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across om floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it and and he "Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. tor. She'll know what to do." Nebsin and another boy peter's building. She was sitting at a desk with When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes. A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin. The doctor her wag and some papyrus scripts . They ran to the OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher. "What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand. "It was small, and brown, with "lark circles," said Nebsin. The doctor looked at one of her papyrus ." She took some "Good. That snake isn't out of nei pag, put them into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She



"It will hurt for a while, but you won't get sick." Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag. "Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked. "It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

Exercises on Lauren 7

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Nebsin's father was a • , who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's • . He was going to the • when Nebsin went to school. Nebsin's dad wanted to learn to read and write. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden • , but he didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box: poisonous – bit – snake – shook – screamed

Once in ancient Egypt, there was a snake moving across the classroom floor of one of the schools. It was a small, brown snake. A boy tried to push the snake away, but it

it is hand, and he his hand, and he has nake wasn't

She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and

it. She poured this onto a cloth. She put this on the bite. "It would hurt for a while, but he wouldn't get sick," she said.

Choose the correct answer:

 In schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on wooden (tablets herbs - bottles).

E E

Connect Plus 6 -

160)

- The (papyrus script tablet) is a type of paper made from plants called reeds.
- 3. The (pharaoh scribe script) is a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court.
- 4. The (corner court classroom) is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions.
- The (herbs papyrus reeds) are plants that people used in food or medicine.
- 6. The (court tablet script) is a piece of paper with information written on it.
- 7. In ancient Egypt, they wrote on wooden (papyrus tablets notebooks).
- 8. When the snake bit his hand, he (screamed laughed relaxed).
- 9. She had rolls of (papyrus scribe tablets) to write in.
- 10. The (palace temple museum) is a place where kings and queens live.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. How - future job - does - feel about - Nebsin - his?

2. does - the bite - the doctor - on - put - What?

2. does - the bite - the doctor - on - put - What?

?

3. was - on - writing - Nebsin - tablet - his wooden.

4. does - the - Nebsin - give to - What advice - doctor?

?

5. you - did - Why - to be - want - a scribe?

?

6. does - snake - the - What - like - look?

?

7. does - What - Nebsin - brother - think about - his?

?

8. did - you - a doctor - learn - How - to be?

→ Step Ahead

Unit 3 Test 3



Test 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر كتاب الملحق.

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. The Shagara at School project designs (red yellow green prue) roofs for school in Egypt.
- Green roofs are (houses villas gardens apartments) on the top of a building.
- 3. Green roofs clean and cool the (soil air water building).
- 4. Green roofs are (bad sad great harmful) for the environment.
- Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. Why is art good for your mind?
- 2. What can you do in the art room?
- Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

Yara ; Hi, Lina. Where are you from?

Lina: Hi, Yara. I'm from Northern Siberia.

Yara : Can you tell me about people in your country?

: Sure. People in the North of Siberia are
They don't live in one place.

: How do they travel from one place to another?

Lina : They travel in sleds across the frozen lands and sleep

in 🔞

Yara: How do their children get an education?

Lina : They send their children away to school.

Yara: Is there another way of learning in your country?

Cords 1

Connect Plus 6+

Yara

161

Lina

: Yes. The second way is nomadic school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice or

1rooms on wheels.

Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

A teacher's job at school is a very difficult one. A teacher should help every student in class to get the most out of what is explained. A teacher should draw their eyes and ears to the explanation in an enjoyable and easy way. A teacher should be all ears when listening to their questions. A successful teacher should be patient, hardworking, friendly and helpful. But it is not always that simple. It is very hard for any teacher to make forty or fifty students quiet and ready to hear what will be said all through the lesson. That is especially clear at the primary stage, where students are always noisy, active and childish.

Choose the correct answer:

- The underlined word "their" refers to (teachers students jobs schools).
- 2. The writer thinks the teacher's job is (noisy childish difficult easy).



Answer these questions:

3. How are students at the primary stage different?

4. How can a teacher be successful?

The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

1	4						
d		5	A-Read	and write	T (True)	or F (False):	
1						*	

(4Ms)

1. Asser saw his dad's shovel inside the garage.

()

2. Shady and his dad were going to the park.

()

162

Step Ahead



Answer the following questions:

3. What was the shovel look like?

4. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?



Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- I have lunch in the (library classroom playground cafeterra) at school.
- (ICT Arabic Science Math) is a subject where you study and use computers.
- 3. I don't have a bike. I (often always never usually) cycle to school.
- 4. Running (making makes make is making) me feel healthy.
- 5. A (teacher librarian principal painter) is in charge of a school.
- 6. Sarah said that she (has have had having) watched television.



Order the words to make a correct sentences:

(2Ms)

- 1. are learning exciting School trips experiences.
- 2. for do What use you the computer?

?



Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

"The school library"

- librarian - places of books - borrow - how often you go there





Connect Plus 6-

163



- listen to and give opinions.
 understand and use noun suffixes.
 understand and use the superiative form of adjectives.
 read and understand a play.
- take part in a play.
- write a detailed personal profile.
- read and understand a story.

Objectives

Vocabulary	Methods of communication: finger Words with suffixes: advertisement	vl. decorate, herd, hunter, leader, movable (elbow),				
Language	Reported questions: - He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside. Superlative adjectives: - Science is the hardest subject for me. - That was the worst test ever!					
Reading	A story about a lesson; a piay, a st	ory about a special girl; a traditional story				
Writing	A paragraph describing people a detailed personal profile					
Speaking	Discuss opinions on different topics; discuss what is the same and what is different between you and a partner; practice and present a play; discuss events in stories					
Listening	A dialog about an amazing young r	man				
Life skills	Critical thinking: comparing similar Self-expression: writing a detailed					
Values	- Tolerance and acceptance	- Respect				
Issues and challenges	- Non-discrimination	- Citizenship				
Integrated cross- Social studies: ensuring everybody in a community helps each other curriculum topics						

Lesson I

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



glasses نظارة - نظارات



braces الجهاز تقويم أسنان



wheelchair كرسي متحرك



hearing aid جه<mark>از المساعدة</mark> على السمع



curly hair شعر مُجَعَّد



'straight hair dark hair



شعر داكن (غامق) ، شعر ناعم - شعر أملس '



mean (n) سیٹ - شریر

مِثَيَّرُ · استثناثب مُمَيَّرُ · استثناثب special different boring مختلف unkind أسنان teeth · sports equally الرياضة creative حصص اللغة - دروس اللغة creative feeling a bit sad sporty يشعر ببعض الحزن

في الواقع - في الحقيقة مُمِل - مُضْجِر فظّ - قاس بالتساوي - بشكل متساو - بالمِثل مبدع - إبداعي

شخص رياضي

Regularmerbs

٠,	Chum			
	walk	تصشمت	walked	walked
ĺ	ask	يسأل	asked	asked

Connect Plus 6 -

(165)

help	يساعد	helped	helped
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
look after	تعيبۍ ۱	looked after	looked after
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
try	يحاول	tried	tried

kregular verbs

Cha	ent E		
tell	يحبر	told	told
get straight	تصبح مستقيمة	got straight	got straight
wear	برتدي	wore	worn
forget	بنسب	forgot	forgotten
see	ىرى	saw	seen

Did you know?

Some people can read with their fingers! Louis Braille invented the Braille writing system when he was only fifteen!

بعض الباس يمكنهم الفراءة بأصابعهم! ابتكر لويس برايل نظام الكتابة بطريمة برايل عندما كان <mark>في سن الخامسة عشر فقطا</mark>

Why we're all special

byReem

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?"

That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he weat classes **1**. Injy wears braces **2** to help her teeth get straight.

🚺 نظارة

🕗 جهاز تقویم أسنان

📵 کرسپ متحرک

جهاز المساعدة
 على السمع



Amal uses a wheelchair obecause she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid obecause she has problems hearing.

166

Step Ahead



We have different families, too – I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friend about something that makes them special. I told Amal I love her curly hair on and the way she helps me



with math – she's the best at math in the class! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad.

Mrs Mona said, "Imagine a world where we're all the same.
What would it be like?"

🗗 شعر ئىيلاد

ہ شعر ناعہ -شعر آملس

"Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit boring."

سمهٔ - لنیم - شریر

"Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things?" said Mrs Mona. "Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said.

"It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair 6.

Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona.

"But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well."

"You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."



Activity Read and write the names

These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

glasses - braces - wheelchair - straight - hearing aid

We don't look the same because our families are different. Asser is very tall.

He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very

..., and he wears glasses. Injy wears

to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a
... because

she cannot walk well. Amina has a • because she has problems hearing. It's good that everyone is different.



168

- Step Ahead

2

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sports - mean - different - kind - glasses

Everyone is . Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at . The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be . to someone because they're different. I saw someone being unkind to my friend because he forgot his . , and so he couldn't see well. I felt sad about that.

Ohoose the correct answer:

- 1. The opposite of curly is (Strate strate t blonde).
- 2. Injy wears (hearing aid Crass weisses) to help her teeth get straight.
- 3. Amal uses a (braces A Use the hearth and) because she cannot walk well.
- 4. Amina has a (hearing ad graces braces) because she has problems hearing.
- 5. Tarek forgot his (wheeler ar hearing aid glasses), so he couldn't see well.
- 6. When someone is (kind joed insen), he's unkind to others.

Read the following text and answer the questions:

I have so many friends. They are all different. Shady is tall. He wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira likes drama and has curly dark hair. She also likes reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.





Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Shady wears (braces hearing aid glasses).
- 2. Amira likes (drama drawing sports).



Answer these questions:

- 3. What's Seleem's favorite subject?
- 4. What sport does Hesham like most?



- 1. different are we How each other to?
- 2. taller is Asser in the class everyone else than.
- 3. at school each should all other We help.
- 4. equally important We are all.
- 5, is everyone Our for school.
- 6. good It's everyone that different is.



"The different people I know"

friends - neighbors - relatives - tall - short - eyes - hair - hearing aid - braces - wheelchair - kind - all important





Lesson 2 Language

0

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



disability اِعامَة - عَجز



hearing difficulties) صعوبات ضي السمع



communicate with پتواصل مع



(way of communicating) طريقة للتواصل



sign language) لعة الإشارة



lip-reading قراءة الشفاه



<mark>chin</mark> ذمّن



forehead جبھة - جُبين

	Extra Vocabulary	كنمات اضاضة	
expressions	تعبيرات	loud noises	صوضاء صاخبة
sounds	أصوات	quiet noises	ضوضاء منخفضة
ideas	أفكار	move it away	يحركها بعيدًا
cat meowing	مواء القطط	whiteboard	ر سبورة بيضاء

Conjugation of verbu

Regular verbe

Present .			
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
happen	يَحْدَث	happened	happened
guess	يُخْمِّن	guessed	guessed

प्रिक्ता ।

© Pyesent®	Pust	
press bغفي	pressed	pressed
smile	smiled .	smiled
ا يدعو - يعزم	invited	invited
communicate يتواطل	communicated	communicated
سove يتحرك - يُحَرِّك	moved	moved
underline (محت كلمة) عمع حطًا (محت كلمة)	underlined	underlined

irregular verbs

91	resign ()	C Pote 1	
hear	بسمع	heard	heard
say	يڤول	said	said
think	ىعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
come	يأتب	came	come

Ways of communicating

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties on

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing • in the morning!

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises

Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions • like smiling, was another.

واء القطة 🐧

🕕 ضوضاء صاخبة

😘 تعبیرات

ھُ يُخَمَٰن 🕝

Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate. Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess • what it is?



Grammar Study 📜



Reported speech (Questions)

تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية إلى كلام غير مباشر

The steps

- 💂 حطوات تحويل الجملة الاستفاهمية إلى كلام غير مباشر .
- 1, We use a reporting verb (asked).
 - 1. نيدأ يمن سأل السؤال متبوعًا بالفعل (ashed).
- We omit the quotation marks, and we use the same question word, which is in the direct question.
 - نحذف علامته التنصيص والفاصلة (* * ،) ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كرابط.
- 3. If the question is a (yes or no) one, we use (W) instead of the question word.
 - 🎝 إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد نستخدم (lf) كرابط.
- 4. The verb comes after the subject, as in ordinary statements.
 - 🙌 تُحَوِّل الصيغة الاستفهامية إلى خبرية بأن يضع الفاعل قبل الفعل المساعد.
- We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.
 - 🎜 تُحَوِّل الضمائر وصفات الملكية على حسب معنى الجملة .
- We change the tenses from present to past and omit the question word.
 - أتحوّل الأرمنة من المضارع إلى الماضي وتُخذَف علامة الاستمهام.

Examples:

- Heba asked, "Where does Esraa go on Fridays?"
 - ▶ Heba asked where Esraa went on Fridays.
- "What are you doing, Tamer?" asked Ayman.
 - Ayman asked Tamer what he was doing.
- The mother asked, "Have you finished your homework, Hend?"
 - The mother asked Hend if she had finished her homework.
- Gamal said to me, "Will you share our project with us?"
 - ▶ Garnal asked if I would share their project with them.







Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

heard - if - couldn't - think - asked

Mr Kamal

us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he

other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning! Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we
hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked

we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)



- She asked (what happened what happens) if you couldn't hear quiet noises.
- 2. He asked (we could if we could) all see the whiteboard.
- $[S]\widehat{B}$

- 3. "How do you communicate at school?"
 - ▶ She asked (how we communicated if we communicate) at school. [5] B
- 4. Do you know how to use sign language?"

- S B
- ► He asked (did I know if I knew) how to use sign language.
- 5. "Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"
 - ► He asked us (if we heard we heard did you heard) lots of sounds outside.
- 6. "What sounds do you hear every day?"
 - ► He asked us what sounds (did we hear we heard if we heard) every day.
- 7. Mr Kamal (said asked told) what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well.
- 8. Adam asked if we (has have had) a house in the country.
- 9. Mr Kamal (told said asked) us in what ways we communicated with each other.



- 10. Mr Kamal asked us if we (could guess can guess guess) what it was.
- 11. Mrs Mona asked (how were we how we were how did we) different to each other.
- 12. The teacher asked the doctor (the boy would if would the boy if the boy would) be OK.
- 13. He asked me (why I wanted what I wanted why did I want) to be a scribe.
- 14. Lina asked what (are they they were they are) going to do.
- 15. Sameh asked who (Monira was was Monira is Monira),
- 16. Sameh asked (how if what) I thought they were happy.
- 17. Nadine asked if (was the house the house was the house is) different then.
- 18. He asked (why you are why were you why you were) asking that.
- 19. Mom asked what (you were were you are you) doing.
- 20. His teacher asked (I could if I could if I can) think of something.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. whiteboard you all see the Can?
 - ?
- 2. school at communicate you do How?
 - ?
- 3. lots of you outside Do sounds hear?
- ?
- 4. guess you Can is it what?
 - .
- 5-ideas of lots had We,
- 6. how you know Do sign language to use?

Lesson 3 Amazing David



Main Vocabulary الكلمان الأساسية في الدرس









prosthetic arm /دراع صاعب (اصطناعب)

movable elbow 'کوع (مِزْمِق) متحرِكُ ا opinions وجهات نظر facts

حفائق

Ex	tra '	Voca	bul	агу

كلمات إصامية

ألعاب الميديو video games مدهش amazing He making animations expensive يطنع أعلام رسوم عيدرده قطص قطوره மப்) comic books cheap ماهر drawing الرسم clever painting رائع التنوين fantastic بانب فَخُطُط بيانب is made of مصنوع من diagram رسم الشخصيات الكرتونية plans

enlightled of ser

Regular verbs عجال منتظمه

		The Street Principle	
	4.1		
nlav			

play	האדו	played	played
paint	يُلَوِّن - يطلب	painted	painted
listen	بستمع	listened	listened
describe	نصم - یشرح	described	described



Lesson

irregular verbs منشمه المعال غير مستمه

	Present	Part	
read	پهرأ	read	read
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made
write	يكتب	wrote	written
draw	րարդ	drew	drawn



Expressing opinions



What do you think about David?



In my opinion, he's very clever.



I think David's family is interesting. What do you think?



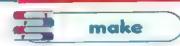
To me, they are very interesting, too.



What about his plans for the future?



I think that his plans to help others are fantastic.



Use "make(s) me" to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.

subject + make(s) me + adjective

- ▶ I have some friends. I am happy. ▶ ▶ My friends make me happy.
- Tou can also use "make me" with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.
- ◆ Use the verb + -ing as the subject of the sentence.
 - ▶ I run. I get healthy. ▶ ▶ Running makes me feel healthy.
 - ▶ I play tennis. I get healthy. ▶ ▶ ▶ Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.

Exercises on Lenson (S)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

disability - arm - movable - plastic - cheap

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Sarah : Hi Mazen! Have you heard about David Aguilar Amphoux?

Sarah : What do you think about David?

Mazen: In my, he's very clever.

Sarah : Why do you think that?

Mazen : David made his prosthetic arm with a movable 9

178

Step Ahead

Sarah : I think David's family is interesting.

Mazen : To me, they are very interesting, too.

Sarah : What about his o for the future?

Mazen: I think he has plans to help others. They're fantastic plans.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. football about think you do What?
- 2. he's clever opinion, In very my.
- 3. the future for plans his about What?
 - ?
- 4. David's think I interesting is family.
- 5. think do David What about you?

7

Write an email to your friend Tom:

Tell him about yourself, your family, your school and your hobbies. Your email address is amgad@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is tom@gmail.com.

From

To.

Subject



A Einia

freigh Be in

Unit 4

Linkson 4 Con I work with your

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary









advertisement , إعلان - دعاية



kindness طِیبة - لُطفِ



researching information ; البحث عن المعلومات/

	more!	1	
agree	نْفق - يوافق	ment	اتفافیة
1	אַדאַ	ness	السعادة

 entertæin
 يَسُلِّس ment
 عينقل

 النقل
 ation
 مرض

 قرض
 ness

الاسترخاء ing

The state of the s		and the same of th	
groups	مجموعات	excellent	ممتاز
posters	ملصقات - بوستران	design (n)	تصميه
colorful	مُلَوْن	finding photos	إيجاد الصور
interesting inf	ormation معلومات شیّقة (مُشَوْمَة)	draw pictures	יונייטט מפנ
work together	يعملون سويًا	already	بالفعل



Produgation of house

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

6			
entertain	يُسَلِّمِ	entertained	entertained
transport	ينقل	transported	transported
start	أيبدأ	started	started
work with	يعمل مع	worked with	worked with
present	يُقَدِّم - يعرض	presented	presented
relax	پسترخي - پستريخ	relaxed	relaxed
live	يعيش	lived	lived
smile	. Griniti	smiled	smiled
love	تحث	loved	loved

Tregular verbs أمعال غير منتظمة

feel	یشعر - یحس	felt	felt
find	تخد ، تخد	found	; found '
get in	یدخل فی	got in	got in
show	يعرض - يُبَيِّن	showed	shown

Read and learn

Mrs Randa: OK, everyone, I want you to groups to make about animals

that live in 6. It should be an advertisement of for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in

your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget - kindness 6 is important.

- 🙆 ملطقات پوسترات
- 👩 الغابات الاستوائية المطيية
 - 👍 إعلان دعاية
 - 😏 طيبة رحمة



Fares

: Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

Tamer

: Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy,

come here!

Magdy

! I'm coming!

: Sherif and Lamar, can I work

with you?

Sherif

: Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.

Fares

: I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone

has their group.

و التصميم

🔞 إيجاد الصور

🕜 البحث عن المعلومات

working on a poster

Mrs Randa: Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Le''s go and talk to Amira.

Amira, who are you working with in

your group?

Amira

; I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

Mrs Randa: Excellent! Here's Fares!

Amira

: Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?

Fares

: I'd love to draw the pictures!

Amira

That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design 6, and Mariam is great at researching information @ and finding photos 9. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team! A little later ...



Mrs Randa: These posters are beautiful. Who did thuse lovely

pictures?



Samer

: That was Fares, Mrs Randa - he really worked hard to make our poster. Fares smiles and looks very proud.



182

Step Ahead

Exercises on Leasen 4

Entrope on Casage
Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

information – rainforests – kindness – colorful – advertisemen

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mrs Randa : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters.

It should be an o for the rainforest.

Fares : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

Tamer : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy.

Fares : Sherif and Lamar, can I @ with you?

Sherif: Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

Fares: I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa.

Mrs Randa : Oh dear! Don't worry. Amira, who are you working with in

your group?

Amira: I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone

else.

Mrs Randa : Excellent! Here's Fares!

Amira : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?

Fares : I'd love to draw the 6!

Amira: That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at

design, and Mariam is great at researching o .

and finding photos.

Choose the correct answer:

1. He was very (ill - illness).

2. His (ill - illness) was very dangerous.

Connect Plus 6

183

184

- 3. Helping people gives me much (happy happiness).
- 4. I'm very (happy happiness) when I help people.
- 5. I always (agree agreement) with most of my dad's opinion.
- 6. The posters should be an (advertise advertisement) for the rainforest.
- 7. Don't forget (kindness kind) is important.
- Mariam is great at researching (inform information) and finding photos.
- The children made interesting (posters photos) and put them on the classroom walls.
- You can get in your (advertisements groups) now. I'd like everyone to work together.

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. you - with - work - I - Can?

2. like - I'd - to - everyone - together - work.

3. draw - pictures - to - I'd - the - love!

4. beautiful - are - posters - These.

5. working - are - Who - group - you - in your - with?

6. a very - will - team - We - good - make!

7. talk - does - Fares - to - Why - Mrs Randa?

8. feel - sad - to - Fares - a bit - starts.

9. and - talk - Amira - Let's - to - go.

10. design - at - good - is - Samer.

Lesson 5 Language

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











elephants , فِيْلَة - أَفيال

mice / فئران

herd قطبع - سِرب

rogr (۷) يزأر - يُصدر صوتًا عاليًا









leader ; قائد - زعیم

hunters / الصيادون

route ر طریق - مس<mark>ار</mark>

path ِ طربق - ممر

	The same of the same of	The state of the s	
king	مَلِك	needs (n)	احتیاجات - متطلبات
queen	مُلِكة	got caught aı طالسه پال	غَلِقَ مُنِ (مُخْ مَصَيْدَة) · نَمَ
mouse	فأر <u> </u>	difference	اختلاف
during the day	حلال النهار - أثناء النهار	the proudest	الأكثر فخرًا
lake	بحيرة	kind	طیب - حبون
village	<u> قری</u> ة	shocked	مصدوم - مذهول
members	أعصاء - أفراد	close to	قریب من
community	محتمع	one day	مت أحد الأيام
difficult situation	موقف صعب	after a while	نعد مدو - نعد بيرو

Conjugation of make

Regular verbs منظمه العالم

roar	يزأر	roared	roared
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
explain	يُوَمَّح - يشرح	explained	explained
change	يُغَيِّر - يتغير	changed	changed
continue	يستمر - يُواصِل	continued	continued
hope	يأمل - يتمنب	hoped	hoped
nod	يومئ برأسه	nodded	nodded

Irregular verbi

	Principal		
hurt	يجرح - يُؤلم	hurt	hurt
meet	يقابل	met	met
catch	يُمسك	caught	caught
hear	हण्णा	heard	heard
mean	يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant
go	أترهنا	went	gone
swim	يَسْبَح - يعوم	swam	swum
bite	يعضٌ - يقضم - يَقْرِض	bit	bitten
get out	یخرج (من شیء)	got out	got out

Definitions Plans SB student's

1	Book
leader	the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen
herd	: a group of elephants
hunter	: a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals
roar	to make a very loud noise
route	: a path or a way to go somewhere

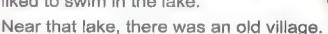




Read and learn-

The elephants and the mice

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader of the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.



Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice 3. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

But, one day, the elephants changed their route o to the lake. This meant they walked along a path o that was too close to o the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them o.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!" The mouse king said, "Don't worry – I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was shocked @ to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation o."

The elephant queen nodded ©. but thought, "We elephants are the most powerful animals in India – why would we need help from little mice?"

A few weeks later, some hunters • were watching the elephants and left nets •. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught • in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared • and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running.



- 🚺 قطيع ښرپ
 - 🙆 قائد زعیم
 - 😉 فئران
- 🗗 بطريق دَرُنيان
- 😉 طريق ممر
- 🜀 قریب جدًا من
 - 🕜 آذوهم
 - و معدوم
- 🗿 موقف صعب
- أومأت برأسها - هرّت رأسها
 - 🛈 صیادون
- 🕑 شِرَاك (للصيد)
- رضي شبكة أو فرب شبكة أو فرب فخ)
- 🦺 زار (أصدر صولًا عاليًّا)



Quickly, they started biting & the nets. The elephants could get out 6! king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved b some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members

16 بخرج

المُذتى ألمُذتى

of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can make a difference."

الأكثر فخرّا

The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest @ mouse in the village!

Grammar Study



(Adjectives) Comparison

المقارنة

Figurember

/ M Comparative degree:

O We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.

> 🔿 تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا.

- ► My uncle is older than my dad.
- O We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.
 - 🔘 نُصْيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than من).
 - ▶ The horse is taller than the dog.
- We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.

🔿 إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (more) أو (less) ويعدها (than).

- A snake is more dangerous than a fox.
- A fox is less dangerous than a snake.

Superlative degree:

• We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals orthings.

 أستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص، أو حيــوان ومجموعــة مــن الحيوانــات، أو شــيء ومجموعــة مــن الأشــياء..... وهكـذا.

Their leader was the kindest of the elephants.

188

Step Ahead

OWe add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.

O نُضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

▶ The mouse king felt like the proudest mouse in the village!

OWhen the adjective ends in (e), we add (st).

🔿 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e)، نضيف لها (st) فقط.

large >>> largest

nice >>> nicest

fine finest

▶ The living room is the largest one in our apartment.

OWhen the adjective ends in a consonant after one vowel, we double the final consonant before adding (est).

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق، نضاعف الحرف الأحيار
 الساكن قبل إضافة (est).

big biggest

fat Frattest

▶The elephant is the biggest land animal.

OWhen the adjective ends in (y), we change the (y) into (i) before adding (est).

🔿 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تُحوُل إلى (i) قبل إصافة (est).

heavy heaviest easy

easiest

happy >>> happiest

noisy noisiest scary

>>> scariest

▶The hippo is one of the heaviest animals.

OWe use (the most) before long adjectives.

O إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها (the most).

► We elephants are the most powerful animals in India.



• We have some irregular adjectives like (good - bad).

🔾 يوجد بعض الصفات الشاذة التي لا تنطبق عليها المواعد السابقة مثل (bad - good).

1	2	3
good	better (than)	(the) best
bad	worse (than)	(the) worst

- Maher is a good chef.
- Tamer is better than Maher at cooking.
- Ayman is the best chef in the hotel.
- My project this time is bad.
- My project this time is worse than the last project.
- My project this time is the worst one I've ever made.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



herd – kindest – leader – route – hurt

Many years ago, a 0 of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their 49 , the queen, was the 59 and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake. But, one day, the elephants changed their to the lake. This meant they walked along a path that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

190

Step Ahead



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

hunters - proudest - difference - members - biggest

Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)

- 1. The (hunter leader herd) is the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen.
- 2. A (herd class route) is a group of elephants.
- 3. The (hunter leader fisherman) is a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals.
- 4. To (roar talk speak) means to make a very loud noise.
- 5. The (route floor roof) is a path or a way to go somewhere.
- 6. (Elephants Mice Lions) are very small animals.

Choose the correct answer:

(Structures)

- 1. January is often the (cold colder coldest) month of the year here in Egypt.
- 2. The Nile crocodile is the (more dangerous _ most dangerous _ dangerous) animal in Egypt.
- 3. Gameela is the (happy happiest happier) girl in the class she's always laughing.
- 4. That man is the (best better good) chef in our city.
- 5. It was the (bad worse worst) vacation it rained the whole time!

Horm 1

- 6. Lake Nasser is the (Diggest b.gger big) lake in Egypt.
- 7. The queen was the (kind kinder kindest) and best of the elephants.
- 8. Elephants thought they are (powerful more powerful than the most powerful) animals in India.
- 9. What's the (eas.est eas.er easy) subject for you?
- 10. The yellow flower is the (most beautiful more beautiful beautiful) one in the garden.
- 11. The blue skirt is (expensive more expensive the most expensive) than the white skirt.
- 12. What's (difficult more difficult than the most difficult) test this month?
- 13. My mom is the (good bester best) cook in the world.
- 14. The mouse king felt like the (proud prouder proudest) mouse in the village!
- 15. Amgad is (fast faster than the tastest) his friend Magdy.
- 16. Do you think the lion is the (most dangerous more dangerous dangerous) animal in the world?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. the lake in The elephants swim to liked.
- 2 out get could elephants The!
- 3. the mice elephants Many of the see didn't.
- 4. and respecting you our needs listening Thank for.
- 5. the elephants help the mice did How?

Lusson & Writing a personal profile

Main Vocabulary الدرس الأساسية في الدرس





personal profile) ملف تعریف شخصی



ُ**blog** مُدَوَّنة إلكترونية



countryside فالريف



hobbies ترهوایات



dentist رطبیب أسنان



braces / جهاز تقویم الأسنان



changes (n) تغییرات - تعدیلات



keen on دریص علی

/			
meeting up	لقاء - مقابلة	games	مباريات
quite tall	طويل بعض الشديء	chart	مُخْطُط بياسٍ - جدول بياسٍ
into photogra	ı phy مهتم بالتصوير - يُحب التصوبر	clear (adj)	واضح
into sports	مهيم بالرياضة - يُحب الرياضة	correct (adj)	محتک - سہتی
local club	نادي محلي	all over the wo	كل أنحاء العالم prld
comments (n)	تعلیقان - ملاحظات	once a month	مرة في الشهر

Constant and Links

أفعال منتظمة عerbs

	PROMIT		
report	يُبْلِغ - برسل تقربر	reported	reported
add	بضيف	added	added

Connect Plus 6 -



arrange	يُرَبِّب - يُنَظِّم	arranged	arranged
introduce	تَوِدُه	introduced	introduced
improve	يُحَسِّن - يُطَوِّر	improved	improved

The elephants and the mice

Hi everybody!

How are things?

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends.

I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces on I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!

I'm keen on a walking with my family and friends, and the countryside an near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography a I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world to

As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club , and we have games about once a month .

On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist o, like my dad.

What about you? What do you look like? What are your hobbies @? Write and tell me about yourself!



🕕 أضع جهار تقويم أسنان

حريص عندي

📵 الريف

أنا مهيمة بالتصوير -أيا أجب التصوير

😏 التقاط الصور

🧿 كل أنجاء العالم

🕡 ئادى فحلى

🔞 عرة في الشهر

و مركر تشوُّق مركر تجارى

🐠 طبیب آسنان

🛈 هوايات



Ug.

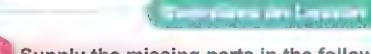
Remember these tips when you write your personal profile:

- ▶ Start with a greeting: Hi/Hey
- ▶ Give your name, your age, and where you live.
- Describe what you look like.
- ► Tell people about your hobbies: I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is ...
- Ask them to write to you:

I can't wait to hear from you! / Write and tell me!

- المحرر محم الملاطات عجما لاينا ملم الدريم المديد الطري بال
 - Hi/Hey :ابدأ بالنحية
 - 🖊 اکتب اسمك وعُمرك وأين تعيش.
 - 🎍 صِفْ كيف تبدو.
 - أحبر الناس عن هواياتك:
 - I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hoppy is ...
 - ◄ اطلب منهم أن يردوا على رسالتك:

I can't wait to hear from you! /Write and tell me!





Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hana: How can you introduce yourself, Dalia?

Dalia: That's easy! My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria.

Hana: What do you look like?

Dalia: I'm quite tall, and I have long brown . I wear braces.

Hana: What are your?

Hana: Do you have other hobbies?

Dalia: Yes, I'm really into . I play volleyball at my local club.

Connect Plus 6 -

195

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

future - mall - profile - braces - games

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm (into to on) photography.
- 2. I'm really into (photography sports music). I play volleyball at my local club.
- 3. I'm (keen watered interested) on walking with my family and friends.
- 4. My (favor flavor favorite) hobby is drawing.
- 5. I can't (see wait feel) to hear from you!
- 6. Write and (talk say tell) me about yourself!
- 7. I'm into (music photography sports). I like taking photos of the countryside.
- 8. Can you write your personal (countryside photography profile)?

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. play I at local club volleyball my.
- 2. for me easy home It's to get.



- 3. do What the weekend do on you?

 7. think I about a lot future the.

 5. to dentist a be like l'd.

 6. hobbies are What your?

 7. can't I to wait from you hear!
- Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

9. plans - future - your - are - What?

"My personal profile"

name - age - live - look like - hobbies - family - friends



Leasen 7 Story: Hand seven the day

الكلمات الأساسية فب الدرس Main Vocabulary





, physiotherapist الماليمين أحصائب العلاج لطبيعي



رحد من معرب معرب الشكل الجماعي .



brain غم ,



, walker مشاية (جهاز يساعد العاجزين علم المشر)



ار پرچف - پخیو ا



, <mark>seat</mark> ب مقعد - کرسپ

	The state of the s		The second secon
save the day	يُنمِد اليوم	. coenly	ُ فجأة - بشكل مفاجماً
come over	تأنث ألث (بتيث)	towards	تجاه - نحو
stars	نجوم	grass	نبشد
stickers	ملطقات - لاطقات	o colibar	متجر (مطعهر) وحبان خمیمه
go for a walk	يذهب للنمشية - بتمشُّم	a group of	مجموعة من
get fresh air	ىسىشى ھواءَ نقبًا	a I hamself up	درفع (يسحب) نفسه لأعلم
differently	ىشكل مختلف - بطريقة مختلفة	quietly	بهدوء - بشكل هادئ



(A) all that

awesome	thankful رائع - مُدهش	شاكر - مُمتنّ
special	relieved خاص - خصوصي	مرتاح - يشعر بالراحة
quite scared	comfortable خائف جڈا	مریح - مرتاح

Conjugation of weeks

Regular verbs مسطمة

2			
turn around	يستدير - يلتف	turned around	turned around
crawl	يزدف - يحبو	crawled	crawled
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
pull up	يسحب (يرفع) لأعلم	pulled up	pulled, up
save	يُنقِدُ	saved	saved
decorate	يُزيّن	decorated	decorated
receive	يتسلم - يستلم	received	received
exercise	يتمرَّن - يتدرُّب	exercised	exercised
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	celebrated

frægular sert i addita et dindi

			The state of the s
come over	ىأتى إلى (ببنى)	came over	come over
get taller	تزداد طولاً	got taller	got taller
get stronger	تزداد قوةً - تصبح أقوب	got stronger	got stronger
run over to	يجري بسرعة إلى	ran over to	run over to

Hana saves the day

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.

"My new walker o arrived. Do you want to come over o and help me decorate o it?"

Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we protect of it green and decorated it with stars and strokers of the looked awesome.

"What should we do now, Reem?" asked Hana.

"I think we should go to the park," I said.

We often go for a walk to the park after school.

Hana's physiotherapist 6, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger.

مشّاية (جهاز يساعد العاجرين على المشي)

و تأتب إلىيّ (بيتي) 🕘

النان 🔞

🐠 لۇن - دھن

👩 ملطقات - لاطقات

أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي

🕜 الشلل الدماغى

🔞 فقعد - کرست

At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

"Well," she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy ."

"Can you do everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat 8 - it's really comfortable."

Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.

"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around o to get him a snack o from my bag, and now I can't see him!"

إشتار - إلتف
 إستخار - إلتف

"How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha.

🕦 يرحف-يحبو

"Only one. He can't walk, he crawls o along the ground."

وَ لاحَظَ الْحُدَا الْحَدَا الْعَدَا الْحَدَا الْعَدَا ال

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting.

ها مامت

🕞 شاکر - مُصِتِّنَ

"Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

🐧 مرتاح - یشعر بالراحة

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road.

🗗 يحيمل

"Adam!" shouted the woman, and she stopped crying.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved to and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate to!

Therether on Little 🕡



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

decorated - arm - exercise - brain - walker

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. She has cerebral palsy which means something happened to her
when she was born, and it works differently to some other people's. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new
every year. Hana's favorite color is green, so she painted her new walker green and
it with stars and stickers. Hana's physiotherapist says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and
her legs so they get stronger.

Term Term



.....



Unit 4 Test 4

lest 4

Total 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر كتاب الملحق.





(4Ms)

- 1. Asser is in primary (three four five six).
- 2. Seleem is short with (green brown blue black) eyes.
- 3. Injy wears (bracelets earrings braces glasses) to help her teeth get better.
- 4. Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't (see smell taste walk) well.

Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. What is David's prosthetic arm made of?
- 2. What did David's dad write?
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

sports - countryside - photography - movies - hobbies

My name is Dalia. I live in the countryside with my family. I'm into

I like taking photos of all the beautiful things in the

I'm really into

volleybali at my school club. I like watching

my family. I really enjoy my time with family.

Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

My neighbor has four children. They are all boys. They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows. Last Saturday afternoon, I was at home having my lunch. After a while, I closed my eyes and fell asleep. Suddenly, a loud crash made me get up quickly. Then I heard a knock on the door. A hoy appeared. "May I get the ball, My neighbor has got four children. They are all boys. They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows. Last Saturday afternoon, I was at home having my lunch. After a while, I closed my eyes and fell asleep. Suddenly, a loud crash made me get up quickly. Then I heard a knock on the door. A boy appeared. "May I get the ball,





Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The boys broke (a window glass a vase nothing).
- 2. The boys played football in the (school club playground street).

Answer these questions:

- 3. What do the four boys usually do?
- 4. What was the writer doing last Saturday afternoon?

The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

A_ Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1. Shady's parents were digging in the park.
- 2. There is a fountain in the sensory garden.

()

Answer the following questions:

- 3. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?
- 4. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden?

Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. A (hunter doctor teacher sculptor) catches or kills wild animals.
- 2. There is a way of communicating called (nose ear hand eye) spelling.
- 3. The poster shows an (advertise advertising advertisement advertised) for the competition.
- 4. January is often (colder the coldest cold coldest) month of the year.
- 5. He has a (wheelchair hearing aid glasses braces) because he has problems hearing.
- 6. She asked (do did if what) I knew how to use sign language.

Order the words to make a correct sentences:

(2Ms)

- 1. roared Elephants loudly very the forest in.
- 2. with a walker What do can people?



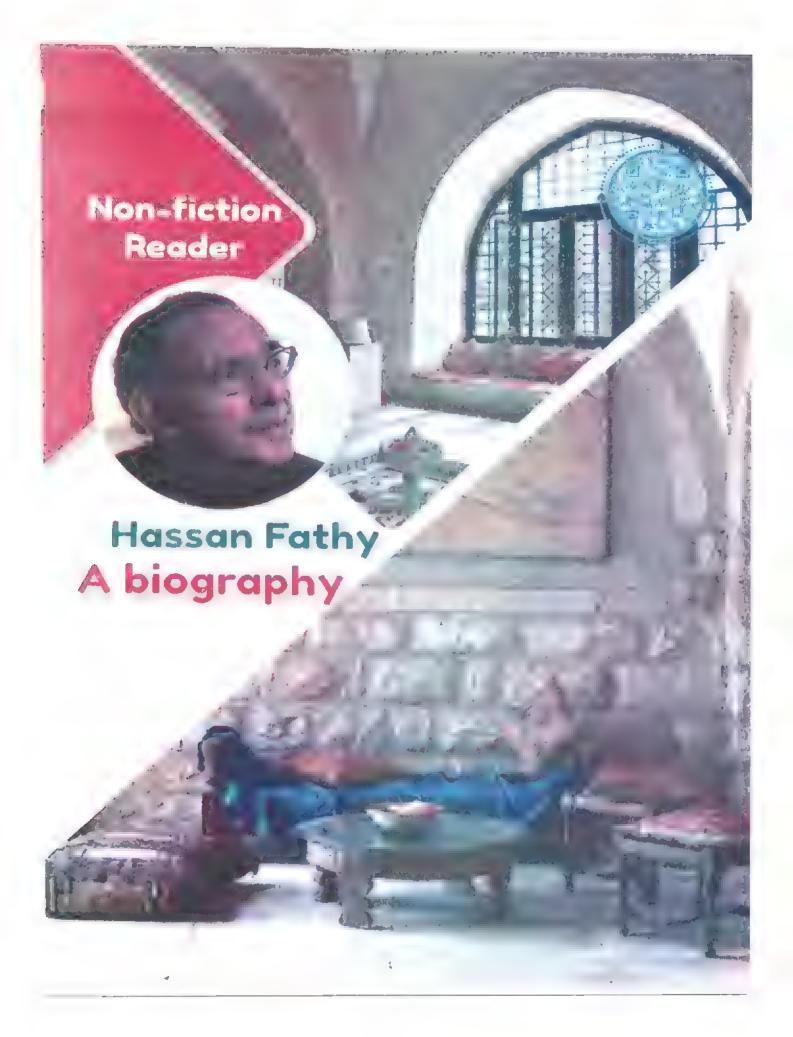
Write an email to your friend Ola:

(4Ms)

Veran 1

Tell her about a story you read in the library last week. What happened in the story? Was it interesting or not? Your email address is mona@school.com. Your friend's email address is hana@gmail.com.

→ Step Ahead



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

Paragrapi	keraldia bil
	A RILL NAME OF

biography	سيرة ذاتية	become	يُصبح
famous	مشهور	teacher	ِ مُدرِس - مُعلَّم
Egyptian	مطري	creative	منجع
architect	مهندس معماري	encourage (v)	يشجع
move(d) to	انتقل إلى	drawing	الرسم
police officer	ضابط شرطة	painting	التلوين
later	لاحقًا	change (v)	ريُغيّر

adult	راشد (بالغ)	materials	مواد بناء
studied (v)	ڏڙس	the Egyptian character	الطابع المصري
architecture	الهندسة المعمارية	features	خصائص
Cairo University	جامعة القاهرة	traditional	تقليدي
building	بثاء	domed roofs	أسطح مُقببة
comfortable	مُريح	mud bricks	طوب لَبِن
attractive	جأأب	cool	بارح
houses	منازل	hot	حار
low-cost	مُليل التكلفة	weather	طقس

(3)

project	مشروع	public buildings	قملد يمنابم
began (v)	بدأ	Ministry of Education	وزارة التربية والتعليم
village	قرية	international	يمالد
Luxor	مدينة الأقصر	award	حائزه
the Valley of the Kings	وادب الملوك	at the age of	مِن عُمر

Parugraph (4)

important	هام	local	محلب
understood (v)	وَهُم	climate	المناخ
respect (v)	يحترم	walls	رحوائط

Paragraph (1)

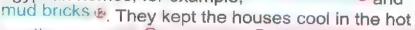
Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect o He was born in Alexandria in 1900. When he was eight, Hassan and his family moved to @ Cairo. His father was a police officer, but later changed jobs 6 to become a teacher. As a child o, Hassan was creative 6, and his family encouraged him 6 to do different things. He loved drawing and painting, and he was very good at math. 🔞 مُبدع 🄞 شجّعته 🔞 عُنِر وظيفته 🗗 كطفل

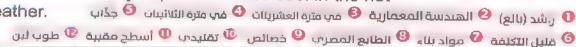


🛈 مهندس معماری

When he was an adult o, Hassan studied architecture o at Cairo University, and he taught the subject in Cairo in the 1920s @ and 1930s . Later, he worked as an architect. As he got

older, Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive houses using low-cost materials . He wanted his houses to have Egyptian character @. His new buildings had features o from traditional o Egyptian homes, for example, domed roofs and





Paragraph (3)

Fathy's first big project began in the 1940s . It was New Gourna, which is a very interesting village. The village is near Luxor. The people there needed to move because their homes were too close to the Valley of the Kings . Fathy built new homes for the people in the traditional style o at low cost. In the 1950s 6, Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education . You can find his buildings all over Egypt and around the world, for example, in New Mexico in the USA. Fathy received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture and an international award for his designs, both in 1980. He lived in Cairo until 1989, when he died at the age of 89. وادي الملوك 🔞 قريبة من 🄞 قريبة من 🔞 وادي الملوك

🐠 نمط تقليد ي 🍮 في فترة الخمسينات 🦸 وزارة التربية و التعليم المصرية

Connect Plus 6.

The Reader

Paragraph (4)

Today, we can see that Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons . Firstly, he understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. Secondly, he respected the people who lived in his buildings. The houses he built are very comfortable, and they work well for the people who live in them. Thirdly, he knew it is important to build for the local climate . His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to ِ 🛈 أسياب 🥹 احترم، 🕄 المباخ المجلب 👽 أسطح مُقبية عالية 😉 حوالط طيلية سمبكة . keep them cool

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

14. New Gourna is a very interesting city. 15. New Gourna is a village near Luxor.

1			
	1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian teacher.	()	Ì
	2. Hassan Fathy was born in Alexandria.	())
	3. Hassan Fathy's father was an architect.	(· · ·)	ŀ
	4. Hassan Fathy loved drawing and painting.	()	þ
	5. Hassan Fathy was very bad at math.	())
	6. Hassan studied architecture at Cairo University.	()
	7. Hassan worked as an architect.	()
	8. Hassan built attractive houses using high-cost materials.	()
	Hassan wanted his houses to have Egyptian character.	()
	10. Hassan's buildings had features from modern Egyptian homes.	()
	11. Traditional Egyptian homes had domed roofs and mud bricks.	()
	12. Mud bricks kept the houses cool in the hot weather.	()
	13. Fathy's first big project began in the 1930s.	(1

 Fathy built new homes in the traditional style for people at Nev 	V
Gourna.	(
4.4. 1.21.11	/

16. The houses in New Gourna were too far from the Valley of the Kings.

	Towns and the second se	4 .
	Gourna.	(
40	market state to be a proposition buildings	(

- 18. Fathy didn't build any public buildings.
- 19. You can find Fathy's buildings all over Egypt only.
- Fathy received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture. (



	ine Hed	ger
	 21. Hassan Fathy lived in Cairo until 1989. 22. Hassan Fathy died at the age of 90. 23. Traditional architecture was great for Hassan's country. 24. Fathy built uncomfortable houses for the people at New Gourna. 25. Hassan knew that it is important to build for the local climate. 	()
(26. Thick mud walls keep the houses cool. Complete the following sentences:	()
	 Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian Hassan Fathy was born in Hassan and his family moved to Cairo when he was Hassan's father changed jobs to become a Hassan loved and painting. Hassan was very good at Hassan studied at Cairo University. Fathy became famous for building houses. Hassan's new buildings had from traditional Egyptian homes. 	
	is something which has a round shape. 12. is a type of building material made of earth. 13. We need to keep our houses in the hot weath 14. New Gourna is a very interesting	(SB) (SB) ther.
	 17. Fathy built new homes in the	
	22. Fathy died at the of 89. 23. Domed roofs and thick walls keep the houses	cool.

(209)

Connect Plus 6 ---

The Reader

3 Answer the following questions:	
1. What was Hassan Fathy's job?	
2. Where was Hassan Fathy born?	
3. Which two cities did Hassan Fathy live in as a child?	SB
4. What was Hassan Fathy's favorite subject?	
5. What did Hassan Fathy love when he was a child?	
6. Where did Hassan study architecture?	
7. What are the special features of Hassan Fahty's buildings?	SB.
8. What do you know about New Gourna?	
9. What did Hassan Fathy build for Egypt's Ministry of Education	•
10. Which countries can you see Hassan Fathy's buildings in?	S B
11. What awards did Hassan Fathy receive?	đ
12. When did Hassan Fathy receive awards?	
13. Why is Hassan Fathy an important person?	SB.
14. What is interesting about Hassan Fathy's buildings?	(<u>s`B</u>)
15. Are Hassan Fathy's buildings similar to buildings in your city/	village?[s]
210	Step Ahead

🛐 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- T	3- F	4- T	5- F	6- T	7- T	8- F	9- T
10- F	11- T	12- T	13- F	14- F	15- T	16- F	17- T	18- F
		21- T						

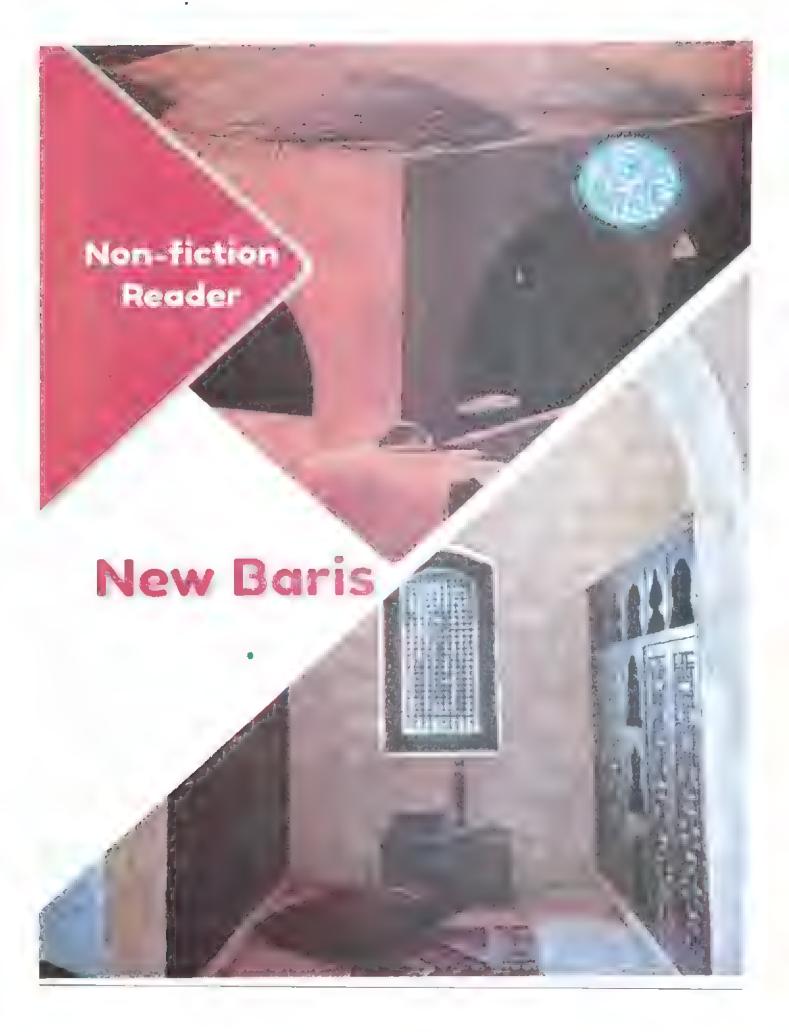
Complete the following sentences:

	architect	2-	Alexandria	3-	eight	4- teacher	5- drawing
	math	7-	architecture	8-	attractive	9- low-cost	10- features
11-	Domed	12-	Mud brick	13-	cool	14- village	15- Luxor
16-	the Valley of the Kings	17-	traditional	18-	project	19- public	20- world
21-	designs	22-	age	23-	mud		

Answer the following questions:

- 1. He was an architect.
- 2. He was born in Alexandria.
- 3. He lived in Alexandria and Cairo.
- 4. He was very good at math.
- 5. He loved drawing and painting.
- He studied architecture at Cairo University.
- 7. They are comfortable, attractive houses with domed roofs and mud bricks.
- 8. It's a village near Luxor. Fathy built new homes for the people there.
- 9. He built public buildings like schools.
- 10. Luxor, Cairo and New Mexico in the USA.
- 11. He received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture and an international award for his designs.
- 12. Hassan Fathy received awards in 1980.
- 13. He understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. He made comfortable houses for the people to live in. He built houses for the local climate.
- 14. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to be cool in the hot weather.
- 15. Yes, they are.





الكلمات الأساسية Main Vocabulary Paragraph (1) planning (n) temperature بنطبط درحة الحرارة organization dobus rose (V) ارتفع design (v) oopi degrees درجات (وحدة قياس الحرارة) desert בתוב crops محاصيل challenges families עבבווי عائلات Paragraph (2) builders shade بنائين ظِل well **ம்** courtyard فناء start seating يبدأ الجلوس windcatchers outside مصدات الريام بالخارج hold create يمسك يخلق area communities منطقة / محتمعات Paragraph (II) unfinished villa غير منتهية فيلا town hall respect دار البلدية يحترم museum in the middle of

The state of the s

In the 1960s, an organization • (called the ODD) asked Hassan Fathy to design of a village in the desert of at Kharga for the farmers. There were two chambers of Firstly, it was important to keep the village cool for the people there. Sometimes, the temperature 9 ... 6 50 correct on the desert at Kharga. Secondly, the farmers needed water for their crops ® and families. They needed to find water before building the new houses.

Haw Ouris

بمركز الاصلام بمركز الاصلام

🕦 منظمة 👂 يعمم 🔞 محراء 🗘 بحديات 😉 درجة الحرارة 🌀 ارتمع إلى 💜 درجات 🧐 محاصيل

social center

في منتصف

، رائع

Building in the desert

The ODD had a team of builders o. Luckily, the builders found a well and they were very happy. Hassan Fathy could start @ building. He began work in 1963. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks. The village also had windcatchers 0 - they are tall buildings which hold o hot air and cool it down.



Fathy carefully studied the position of the sun and designed the area 6 so that the buildings gave shade 6 to people in the streets. He started with his domed roofs for the houses. Then, he added a taktabosh courtyard 3, which provided a shaded seating 3 area outside . Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings for the people. He believed it was important to create 🐠



communities 🗗, not just houses. و بشر 🔞 يبدأ 🚱 مصدات الرباح 🏮 بمسك 🐧 🜀 منطقة 🕜 ظِل 🔞 فِناء 👂 جلوس 🌓 بالخارج 🛈 يخلق 🥏 مجتمعات

New Baris now

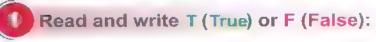
Sadly, New Baris is unfinished . Work on it stopped in 1967, but today you can still see the suk, the main town hall 9, the beginning of the museum 9 and social center o, and some villas o. You can see and respect 6 Hassan Fathy's designs. Hassan A county or a live will oris Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the middle of the desert. He wanted to give the farmers a fantastic @ place to live.



🕕 غير منتهية 🕑 دار البندية

🔞 متحف 🄞 المركز الاجتماعي 😉 فیلات 👩 پحترہ 🕜 فی منتصف 🔞 راثع

Cuestions with their model warmen.



Hassan Fathy needed to build a village in the courtyard.

214

+ Step Ahead

	_			
_		-	ead	
			A 400 AND	-

2. The builders found a well in the desert.	()
3. The village houses were made of mud bricks.	()
4. A courtyard is a tall building which hold hot air and cool it down.	()
5. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and windcatchers to make the ho	ouses
cool.	()
6. Hassan Fathy researched how to give the streets water.	()
7. Hassan Fathy designed a whole community, not just houses.	()
8. Hassan Fathy designed buildings that gave shade to people in the	ne '
streets.	()
9. The work on New Baris stopped in 1970.	(.)
10. Today you can still see the main town hall of New Baris.	()
11. There aren't any villas in New Baris now.	()
12. You can still see the suk and the beginning of the museum in Ne	∍w
Baris today.	()
13. We should respect Hassan Fathy's designs.	()
14. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of teachers in the	middle
of the desert.	()
15. Hassan Fathy wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live	e.()
Complete the following sentences:	
1. Hassan Fathy designed a in the desert at Kharge 2. It was important to keep the village for the people 3. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 in the desert at Kharge 4. It was important to keep the village for the people in the desert of Kharga.	there.
4. The farmers at Kharga needed water for their and fa	amilies.
5. The houses of the village were made of	
6. The builders found a in the desert and they were very	happy.
7. There wasn't enough for the people at Kharga.	S B
8. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and to make the	
houses cool.	S'B
9. Hassan Fathy carefully studied the position of the	
during the building process.	(21E)
CONTROL FIGS 9	(215)

The Reader	
10. Fathy researched how to give the streets	SB
11. Fathy designed a whole community, not just	SB
12. The work on New Baris In 1967.	
13. You can still see the beginning of the in Ne	ew Baris.
14. We should respect Hassan Fathy's	
15. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the	he middle
of the	
16. Hassan Fathy wanted to give the farmers a	lace to live.
Answer the following questions:	
1. Why was it difficult to build in the desert?	SB
•	•
2. Where did Hassan Fathy design a village?	
3. What challenges did Hassan Fathy face during building in th	e desert?
What was the weather like in the desert at Kharga during the	building
process?	
	•
5. What did the farmers need to find in the desert at Kharga?	
•	
6. Why did the farmers look for water?	
7. What did the builders find in the desert?	
8. How did the builders feel when they found water in the deser	rt?
6. How did the builders feel when they found water in the deser	
9. When did Hassan Fathy begin work in New Baris?	
	Chan Ahaad
(216)	→ Step Ahead

10. What did Hassan Fathy do to keep the village houses cool? 11. What do you know about windcatchers? 12. Why did Hassan Fathy study the position of the sun? 13. What did Hassan Fathy want to create at Kharga? 14. Why did Hassan Fathy build a courtyard? 15. When did the work on New Baris stop? 16. What can you still see in New Baris today? 17. Where did Hassan Fathy create the community of farmers? 18. Why did Hassan Fathy create that community of farmers at Kharga? Answers Read and write T (True) or F (False): 2- T 1- F 6-

2	Complet	e the	following	sentences:
---	---------	-------	-----------	------------

13- T

12- T

1- village	2- cool	3- degrees	4- crops	5- mud bricks
6- well	7- water	8- windcatchers	9- sun	10- shade
11- houses	12- stopped	13- museum	14- designs	15- desert
16- fantastic				

5- T

14- F

15- T

7- T



10- T

11- F

The Reader

Answer the following questions:

- 1. Because of the high temperature and the lack of water.
- 2. He designed a village in the desert at Kharga.
- He needed to keep the village cool and find water for farmers' families and crops.
- 4. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 degrees.
- 5. They needed to find water.
- 6. Because they needed it for their crops and families.
- 7. They found a well.
- 8. They were very happy.
- Hassan Fathy began work in New Baris in 1963.
- 10. He used mud bricks for building the houses and he also used windcatchers to cool down the hot air.
- 11. They are tail buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.
- 12. To give people shade in the streets.
- 13. He wanted to create communities, not just houses.
- 14. To provide a shaded setting area outside.
- **15.** It stopped in 1967.
- 16. I can see the suk, the main town hall, the beginning of the museum, the social center and some villas.
- 17. In the middle of the desert.
- 18. Because he wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live in.





Characters





She drives her children, Mayar and Asser to school every day. She also helps the children's dad to make the sensory garden.

ulucasia

تقوم الأم بتوصيل أبنائها (ميار وآس) إلى المدرسة كل يوم كما تساعد والد أبنائها في

ويناعه الجديمة الجسية



He loves reading books with his daughter Mayar in braille. He also helps the builders in digging the sensory garden to make the children happy.

يجب الأب قراءة الكتب مع ابلته ميار بطريقة برايل للمكفوفين وهو أيضًا يساعد البنائين في حفر الحديقة الحسية لجعل الأطفال سعداء.



She takes Asser and Mayar to her house after school every day. She also makes cookies for them.

تقوم الجدة بأخذ آسر وميار إلم منزلها بعد المدرسة كل يوم كما تقوم بإعداد السكونت لهور



He is Mayar's brother. He loves playing the guitar and singing. He likes playing football with his friend, Shady. He helps his parents in planting the flowers in the sensory garden.

هو أخ ميار ويحب عزف الجيتار والغناء كما يجب لعب كرة القدم، مع صديقه شادى، ويساعد والديه في زراعة الزهور في الحديقة الحسية.



She is Asser's sister. She reads books in braille. She likes listening to audiobooks. She enjoys the fountain in the sensory garden very much.

هي أَخِتَ أَسَرَ وَتَحَبَ قَرَاءَهُ الْكَتَبِ بَطَرِيقَةَ بَرَائِلَ كَمَا تَحَبِ أَيْضًا الاستماعِ إلَّ الْكَتَب رالمسموعة ويستمتع جدًا بالنافورة في الحديقة الحسبة.



He is Asser's friend. He plays football with Asser in the park. He knew the voice of Asser's parents and discovered the secret of the sensory garden with Asser.

هو صديق آسر الذب يلعب فعه كرة القدم في الحديقة. لقد تعرف على <mark>صوت والدب</mark> السر واكتشف سر الحديقة الحسية مع أسر.



The Reader



She is Mayar's teacher. She gave her a book in braille to read by herself.

ر هي معلمة ميار التي أعطتها كتاب بطريقة برايل لتمرأه ببفسها



She is Asser's teacher. She takes the children outside to the school gates.

رحب معلمة آسر التي تأخذ الأطفال للخارج عند بوابات المدرسة.



Connect Plus 6 -

	Main Vocabulary	الكلمات الاساسية	•
neatly	بنظام	dig	يحفر
outside	بالخارج	surprised	مندهش
gates	بوابات	spade	جاروم
wave	يلوح	information board	لوحة المعلومات
pick up	يأحذ/يوصل	sensory garden	حديقة حسية
strange	பர்க	neighborhood	حش
boots	حذاء طویل	fountain	نافورة
pottery class	بصة صناعة النزف	wide paths	ممرات واسعة
apron	مريلة	wheelchairs	كراسي متحركة
concert	حفلة موسيقية	awesome	رائع
remember	يتذكر	surprise(n)	مفاجأة
practice(v)	مارك	forget	بسني

Part (1)

It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly •. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside . Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at . the school gates . He smiled and waved . at her.

بنظام 2 الخارج 3 تنتظرعند، 4 بوابات
 لؤج





Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up 0, and he hugged o her. "What a nice surprise 9! I didn't know you were coming today," he said.

"Your mom is busy 👊 so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar come out of 6 her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She looked @ very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to talk to 🛭 Grandma. تأخذون 😉 احتصنها 🔞 مفادأة











Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in braille o that she can read herself @."

"Thank you!" said Grandma, "We can read this together 6 this evening."

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies o?"

"Yes, please!" said Asser and Mayar.











Constinus with their repdail entweet

- Read and write T (True) or F (False):
- 1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher.
- Asser saw his mom at the school gates.
- 3. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book.





Connect Plus 6

The Reader The Reader	Fight Wash of Global to the total world of the Colonial to Global
4. The children's Grandma took them5. Mayar has a new book with words i6. Grandma and the children made a	n braille.
Complete the following sente	nces:
 Asser looked for his	nildren at the school gates. arrying a .
Answer the following question	ns:
 Who is Mrs Eman? Who came to take Asser and Maya Where was the children's Grandma What did Asser do when he saw his What was Mayar carrying when she Who came to talk to the children's C Why could Mayar read the book by What did the children make with the Ansers Read and write T (True) or F (Fa T 2- F 3- F 4 Complete the following sentence 	waiting for them? Grandma? came out of her classroom? Grandma? herself? oir Grandma? lse): - T 5- T 6- F es:
1- mom 2- teacher 3- Grandma 4	
Answer the following questions: She's Asser's teacher. 	2. Their Grandma.
3. At the school gates.	4. He smiled and waved at her.
5. She was carrying a book.	6. Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza.
7. Because it was written in braille.	8. They made cookies.
224)	Step Ahead

Verten 1



The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents o arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom." said their mom.

"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

"Did you have a good time 9 with

Grandma today?" asked their mom.

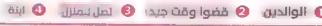
'Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home 6," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped her to read. Now, they love reading with their daughter o in the evenings.









The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk o, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots @ there, and they were muddy @.

"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.

🕕 حقيبة السيارة، 😢 جذاء طويل؛ 🔞 مغطب بالوحل





The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today."

"Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

"Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at seven o'clock."

"OK," said Asser.

"It's music club • today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes • at lunchtime, so remember your apron •."

🛈 ناد موسیقی د 😉 حصص صناعة الخزف 🤞 مریلة



"Can we listen to an audiobook •, Mom?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course," her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert onext week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later one was a supplied to a sk her later



Constitute with their produit course

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

🥃 حَفْلَةُ مُوسِيقِيةُ مُدَرِسِيةٌ 🏽 🗗 لأحقًا

- 1. The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. (
- 2. The children's parents arrived at Grandma's house after lunch. ()
- 3. Asser and Mayar had a good time with their Grandma. ()



Step Ahead

	The Reader
4. Mayar's parents didn't learn to read in braille.	()
Asser's family took the train to go home.	()
Mayar put the school bags in the trunk.	()
The boots in the trunk were muddy.	()
8. Asser's parents went to the farm.	()
The children's parents were very busy.	()
10. Asser liked to play the guitar.	()
11. Mom had pottery classes at lunchtime.	()
12. Mayar listened to the radio in the car.	()
13. Asser was thinking about his school concert.	()
Complete the following sentences:	
1. The children stayed at Grandma's house until the	
2. The children's parents arrived after to Gra	ndma's house.
3. When Mayar was a baby, her parents learned	
4. Mayar's parents love with her in the eveni	ngs.
5. The family got in the to go home.	
6. Asser put the school bags in the open .	
7. Asser noticed that his mom and dad's boots were	
8. Asser took his because he had a music cli	υb.
Mayar needed to take her at the pottery cl	
10. Mayar listened to an In the car.	
AA A	week.
Answer the following questions:	
1. Where did the children stay after school?	
	•
2. When did the children's parents arrive to Grandma's hou	ise?
3. Did the children have a good time with their Grandma?	
4. How did mom and dad feel when they saw Mayar's book	? ED
Connect Plus 6	(227)

The Reader 5. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby? 6. How did the family go home? 7. Where did Asser put the school bags? 8. What did Asser see in the trunk? 9. How did the boots look like? 10. What did Asser take to the music club? 11. What did Mayar take to her pottery classes? 12. What did Mayar listen to in the car? 13. What was Asser thinking about in the car? Answers Read and write T (True) or F (Falsa): 3- T 4- F 5- F 6- 1 7- T 2-12- F 10- T 11- F 13- T Complete the following sentences: 6- trunk 1- evening 2- dinner 3- brailio 4-16.4 5- 131

Answer the following questions:

9- apron

- 1. At Grandma's house.
- 3. Yes, they did.

7- muddy

5. They learned reading in braille.

8- guitar

- 7. In the open trunk.
- 9. They were muddy.
- 11. She took her apron.

2. After dinner.

10- 111 7 30

- 4. They were very happy.
- 6. By car.
- 8. He saw his mom and dad's boots.

11-

- 10. He took his guitar.
- 12. She listened to an audiobook.

13. He was thinking about his school concert.

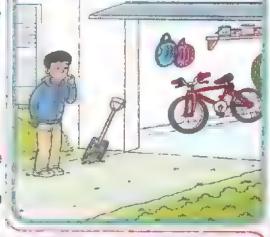
228

→ Step Ahead

Pur+ (3)

On the weekend o, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to o take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful o day, so Asser decided to o take his football.

He went to the garage of to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel of the was covered in mud of the yard of there was nothing different there, no new trees or plants of the was the shovel so muddy?



🕕 في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع 😢 خططت لـ 🔞 جميل

"That's strange u," thought Asser.

🚯 مُرر أن 🧐 جراج 🐧 جاروف 🗑 مغطم بالمودل 🔞 نظر دول 🕙 فناء 🐧 نبانات 👣 غريب

Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about • the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing • and play his guitar •. Did they remember • about it? They were so busy. He practiced • his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well •.



Gunntlern with their model entwert

- Read and write T (True) or F (False):
- 1. Asser went to the park to get his football.
- Asser saw his dad's shovel inside the garage.
 Dad's shovel was covered in mud.

Connect Pius 6 ⊢



The Reader

- Asser found new trees around the yard.
- 5. Mayar was worried about the concert.

(....)



Complete the following sentences:

- 1. Asser decided to play on the weekend.
- Asser went to the to get his football.
- 3. Asser saw his dad's outside the garage.
- 4. Dad's shovel was covered in
- 5. Asser didn't find any new trees around the
- 6. Asser was worried about the
- 7. Asser wanted his parents to hear him play his
- 8. Asser's mom and dad were so



Answer the following questions:

- 1. What did the children's mom plan to do on the weekend?
- 2. What did Asser decided to do on the weekend?
- 3. Where did Asser go to get his football?
- 4. What did Asser see outside the garage?
- 5. What was the shovel look like?
- 6. What did Asser do when he saw the shovel covered in mud?
- 7. What did Asser want?
- 8. Why did Asser want his parents to come to the concert?
- 9. What did Asser do before the concert?



1- football	2- garage	3- shovel	4- mud
5- yard	6- concert	7- guitar	8- yard

- Answer the July 1965 cons:
- 1. She planned to take the children to Grandma's house.
- He decided to play football.
- He went to the garage.
- He saw his dad's shovel.
- 5, It was so muddy.
- 6. He looked around the yard to see if there were any new trees or plants. 7. He wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert.

- 8. To hear him sing and play the guitar. 9. He practic d his song a lot.



Part (4)

Later on ①, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to ② an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser. I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park 6 with me and my dad?" asked Shady.

'Yes, but I'll have to ask @ Grandma," said Asser.



Asser went in Some o. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please @?" he said.

"Year of course w. Take your water bottle s!" replied Grandma.

🚯 في وقت لاحق 🕙 استمعت إلى 🔞 مديقة 🚯 اسأل 🔞 انداخل 😸 أرجوك 🤟 نعم، بالطبع 🕠 زجاجة

Asser and Shady had fun o in the park.
When they got tired o, they sat down o
by some thick bushes o. They drank o
some water and ate o some fruit o. They
were sitting quietly o when they heard
people talking.

"That sounds like o your mom and dad," said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right **1**0. It sounded like they were near **1**0 – but where?



🕦 استمتعوا بوقتهم 📀 تعنوا 🔞 بلسوا 🚱 شجرات كثيفة 🚱 شربوا 👩 أكلوا 🍪 فاكهة 🖯 بهدوء ② بيجو أنه 🐧 على حق 🚯 قريبين



Carethra with their medel entwers	-	
Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. Asser was playing football at school.	()
2. Grandma listened to an audiobook.	(.)
Shady and his dad were going to the park.	()
4. Shady saw Asser playing in Grandma's yard.	(.	.)
Asser asked his mom to go to the park with Shady.	()
6. Asser and Shady had fun in the park.	()
7. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. SB	()
8. There were some thick bushes in the park.	()
9. Mayar and Asser ate some fruit in the park.	()
10. Asser and Shady heard Shady's parents talking in the park.	B	()
Complete the following sentences:		
1. Asser was playing football in Grandma's		
2. Shady is Asser's		
3. Shady was walking with his when he saw Asser	•	
4. Shady and his dad were going to the		
5. Asser and Shady sat down by some thick		
6. Shady and Asser drank some in the park.		
7. Asser and Shady some fruit.		
8. Shady heard the voice of Asser's		
Answer the following questions:		
1. What did Asser do in Grandma's yard?		
>		
2. What did Mayar do in Grandma's yard?		
• ····································		
232)	Sten	Ahead

- 3. Where did Asser and Shady go?
 - The state of the s
- 4. What did Asser's Grandma ask him to take?
- 5. Where did Asser and Shady sit down in the park?

- -
- 6. What did Asser and Shady do in the park?
 -
- 7. What did Asser and Shady hear in the park?

- 8. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?
- SB



Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2- F	3- T	4- T	5- F
6- T	7- F	8- T	9- F	10- F

2 Complete the following sentences:

1- yard	2- friend	3- dad	4- park
5- bushes	6- water	7- ate	8- parents

- Answer the following questions:
- 1. He played football.
- 2. She listened to an audiobook.
- 3. They went to the park.
- 4. She asked him to take his water bottle.
- 5. They sat down by some thick bushes.
- They played football, drank some water and ate some fruit.
- 7. They heard Asser's mom and dad talking.
- 8. He heard them talking on the other side of the park.



Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. On the other side o, there was a group of a people working. Asser's parents were there, digging 6.

Asser ran over to o his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked surprised 6.

"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."



🗿 متفاجلون 👩 دعوا 🕜 جذاء طویل مغطب بالوحل

Asser's parents looked at o each other and laughed . His dad put down shis spade 4. They showed 4 Asser and Shady a large information board o with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting onew play equipment o.

"We're making a playground with a sensory garden . It's for all the children in the neighborhood @ to enjoy ." said Salma.

Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be amazing ..." he said





🚯 شَيِّمَةٌ 👂 أَدُوانَ اللَّعِبِ 👣 سَاحَةُ اللَّعِبِ 🕦 حَدِيقَةُ حَشِيةٌ 🤌 الْحَيِّ 🥵 يَسْتَمْتُعُوا 🚯 مُدَهِشُ



Questions with their model imporers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):		
1. There was a group of people working in the park.	()
2. Shady's parents were digging in the park.	()
3. Asser's parents looked surprised when they saw him.	()
4. Shady and his dad invited Mayar to come to the park.	()
5. Asser's dad's boots were muddy.	()
6. Asser's dad used a spade for digging.	()
7. There was a plan on the large information board.	()
8. The information board showed some boring play equipment.	()
9. Asser's mom and dad were making a playground with a sense	ory	
garden.	()
Complete the following sentences:		
1. Asser's parents were in the park.		
2. Asser's parents looked when they saw him.		
3. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the		
4. Asser's dad's were muddy.		
5. Asser's dad was digging with a		
6. The plan showed lots of exciting new play .		
7. The children's parents made a playground with a		
8. The sensory garden was made for all the children in the		
Answer the following questions:		
1. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?		
2. Why did Asser go to the park?		

Connect Plus 6 ⊢

235

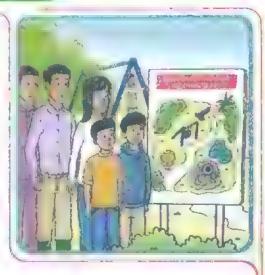
3. What did Asser see when he looked do	own?	
4. Why did Asser's parents have muddy b	oots?	5 B
5. What did Asser's parents do when they		
6. What was Asser's parents' secret?		SB
7. What did Asser's parents show him?		
8. What did Asser and Shady see on the i		rd?
Answers	4+0-=07-0200-41-000-41-01-041	bandang g
1 Read and write T (True) or F (False)):	
1 T 2-F 3-T 4-F 5-T	6- T 7- T	8- F 9- T
2 Complete the following sentences:		
1-digging 2-surprised 3-park 6-equipment 7-sensory garden	4- boots 8- neighbo	5- spade orhood
3 Answer the following questions:		407
1. They were digging.		
2. Because Shady and his dad invited him	ı to come.	
3. He saw his dad's muddy boots.		
4. Because they were digging in the park.		
5. They looked at each other and laughed	a.	
6. They were making a playground with a	sensory garder	1.
7. They showed him a large information be	oard with a plar	on it.
8. They saw lots of exciting new play equi	pment.	

ित्रका १

Part (6)

"What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds • of interesting • things," said Asser's dad.
"Mayar and lots of other children couldn't use some of the equipment • in the old • playground. So, we're working with these builders • to make a space • that everybody can enjoy. There's a fountain •, and there will be wind chimes • for relaxing sounds •. There will be wide paths •, so it's easy for • people in wheelchairs • to enjoy the garden."



"We're planting flowers too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful to "This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"

🕻 ألواع 🔇 مُمتَعَة 🔞 أدوات 🗗 قديم 💪 باثين 🕝 مساحة 🧷 نامورة 🚯 أحراس الرياح 🧐 أصوات مريحة للأعطاب ۴ ذروت واسعه 🕦 سهل عنب 🌓 كرانسي متحركة 🌓 بررع الزهور 🚯 جميلة

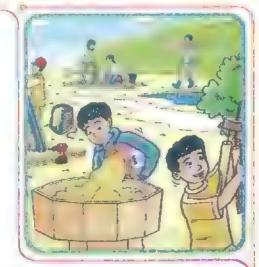
"Yes, It is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise of said his dad.

"I'd love to something to help, too o!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are putting in • the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers."

"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work o, but the boys had fun.



"Thank you for helping o!" said Asser's mom. "When this opens o next week, you can come and show everybody aroundo." فظطأة و أصبان و علاية الله عنداًة الله علية الله عنداًة الله عنداًة الله الله عنداً الله عنداًا الله عنداً الله ع

المكان المساعدة 🕜 تُفتَّنَح 🔞 تريهم المكان 🔞 أيضًا 4 بمعوا

The Reader

238

The next weekend, the children's Mom said,

"Mayar, we have a surprise!"

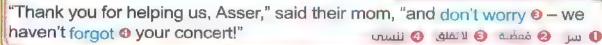
"What is it?" asked Mayar.

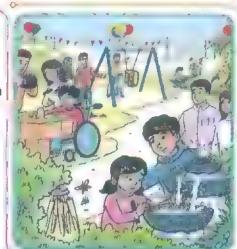
"We can't tell you. It's a secret . Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.

"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.

"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite thing!" said Mayar.





Step Ahead

Questions with their model oursers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):
A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see and touch interesting things.
2. Asser and some children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old
playground. ()
3. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. ()
4. There will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. ()
5. It's difficult for people in wheelchairs to enjoy in the garden. ()
6. The children's parents are planting some flowers in the sensory garden.
()
7. Asser and Shady didn't help the parents in the sensory garden. ()
8. Shady and Asser worked hard in the sensory garden. ()
Mayar was happy when she knew about the surprise of the sensory garden.
10. Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. ()
11. Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden was the fountain. ()
12. Asser's parents forgot his concert.



Complete the following sentences:

- A is a place where you can hear, see and touch interesting things.
- 2. Mayar couldn't use some of the equipment in the old
- 3. There are some wind chimes for sounds in the sensory garden.
- 4. There will be wide paths for people in to enjoy the garden.
- 5. The smell beautiful in the sensory garden.
- 6. The are putting in the big equipment next week.
- 7. Asser's mom asked him to the wind chimes.
- 8. Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden is the



Answer the following questions:

- 1. What's a sensory garden?
- 2. What was wrong with the old playground?
- 3. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden?
- 4. Which things in the sensory garden can people touch?
- 5. Which things in the sensory garden can people hear?
- 6. Which things in the sensory garden can people meal?
- 7. Why did they make wide paths in the sensory garden?
- 8. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden?
- 9. What did Asser and Shady do in the sensory garden?
- 10. When will the sensory garden open?
- 11. Who showed Mayar around the sensory garden?
- 12. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden?
- 13. Who is your favorite character in the story? Why?
- 14. Which is your favorite part of the story? Why?
- 15. Do you like the story? Why/Why not?
- 16. What are the morals of the story?

- SB
- S B
- 5 B
- 5 B
- S B

Answers

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1-	T	2-	F	3-	T	4- T	5- F	6- T
7-	F	8-	T	9-	T	10- T	11- T	12- F

The Reader

2 Complete the following sentences:

1- sensory garden	2- playground	3- relaxing	4- wheelchairs	
5- flowers	6- builders	7- hang	8- fountain	

3 Answer the following questions:

- 1. It's a place where you can hear, see and touch all kinds of interesting things.
- Mayar and some children couldn't use some of the old equipment in it.
 There wasn't enough space for people in wheelchairs to move easily.
- 3. Mayar, some children in the neighborhood and the people in wheelchairs.
- 4. They can touch the fountains.
- 5. They can hear the relaxing sounds of the wind chimes.
- 6. They can smell the beautiful flowers.
- 7. To make it easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden.
- 8. They wanted to make a surprise.
- 9. They planted the flowers and hung the wind chimes. 10. Next week.
- 11. Asser enjoyed doing that.

12. The fountain.

13. Suggested Answer:

- My favorite character in the story is the children's Grandma. Because she is kind and helpful.
- My favorite character in the story is Asser. Because he takes care of his sister. He always helps his parents.

14. Suggested Answer:

- My favorite part of the story is the last part when they opened the
 sensory garden. Because everyone was happy and they all enjoyed in the sensory garden.
- 15. Yes, I like the story very much. Because it encourages people to be helpful and kind.

16. Suggested Answer:

- Helping our family is a very important thing.
- It is important to think about everyone in our community.



ملحوظة هامة: نصوص الاستماع موجودة في آخر كتاب الملحق.

240

Step Ahead

Steps 1 ed Series Together to a bright future



Content

Part	
Unit (1) Express yourself!	3
Unit (1) Test (1)	9
Unit (2) Home is where the heart is	12
Unit (2) Test (2)	(19)
Unit (3) School time!	22
Unit (3) Test (3)	27
Unit (4) We can make a difference!	30
Unit (4) Test (4)	34
Part 2 Revision Tests	37
Part 3 Listening Scripts	53 ,
Part 4 Answer Key	(60)



Read and complete the text with the words from the box: clay - happy - messy - relaxing - paints

Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels

she's painting. If she's sad, she

Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery. He thinks it's

Noha doesn't agree. She doesn't like getting her hands

thinks it's uncomfortable to have

on her hands.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

solid – art – bubbles – irregular – sculpture

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor who was born in India and studied art in the UK
He makes large pieces of that people can see in public places. Tall Tree and the Eye is his famous (2) outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. It is made from 73 stainless steel round spheres that look like (3) . The spheres are arranged in an (4) pattern and they look like they are floating in the air.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

damage - reflects - outdoor - Stainless steel - strong : 100 100

Kapoor, the famous sculptor, used three large metal sticks to make his famous sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye 1

is a good metal for <a> art because it stays shiny and the weather doesn't damage it. Kapoor's sculpture in Chicago, USA called Cloud Gate, <a> the sky, the buildings, and the people around it.

Connect Plus 6

2

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

theater - choir - costume - photography - play

It is two weeks until the school show, and everybody is excited. Ten actors are going to act in the ① at the theater on Friday. Nadine and Sarah are going to sing in the school ② . Fares is going to bring his camera because he loves ③ . Mom is making me a ④ to wear at the school show. We saw an advertisement for the show at the town hall.

B Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

kiln - clay - wheel - decorated - apron

My name is Amira. My class worked on a pottery project last week. I started with a lump of ① I chose to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery ② . . 1 put on an over my clothes. I put my clay on the wheel. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a ④ . Finally, the bowl was ready. I used special paint to decorate it.

6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sculptures - jewelry - bottles - shells - cloth

If you are creative, you can enter our new competition. There are different activities you can join the competition with. You can use leaves or

in outdoor art. You can use different colored beads to make

You can use plastic

which is a second to the competition with an inverse or cardboard in junk modeling. Wood or clay are good things to use for you can use a computer to make an animation.

Step Ahead

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ali ; Hi, Ahmed Did you read about Anish Kapoor?

Ahmed: Hi, Ali. Yes, sure. He is a great 1

Ali : ② was he born?

Ahmed: He was born in India.

Ali : What materials does he use for making sculptures?

Ahmed : He uses 3 _____ for making his sculptures.

Ali : Why does he use stainless steel?

Ahmed : Because it's a very strong material and it's good for

4 sculptures.



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Jana : Hana! Guess what?

Hana: What happened, Jana?

Jana : I worked on a ① project at school this week.

Hana: Really? How did you start?

Jana : I started with a lump of ②

Hana: What did you choose to make?

Jana : I chose to make a ③

Hana: What did you use to decorate it?

Jana : I used special (4) to decorate it I painted it pink.



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Talia : Hi, Tamara.
Temara : Hi, Talia.

Talia : I joined a new ① at school this term.

Tamara: What activity do you have in this club?

Talia: I'm learning to use computers to make ②

Tamara : How can you make animations?

Talia : I can make them by using technology and moving 3

Tamara : What can an animation tell?

Talia: It can tell a great (4)!

.....

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. colored used I jewelry beads to make.
- 2. yourself do express like to How you?
- ?
- 3. box a cardboard make can you with What?
- 4. activity favorite pottery making His is.
- E noom the of Averse a part is
- 5. poem the of A verse a part is.
- 6. week There next is concert a.
- 7. own writes Mazen his songs.
- 8. costumes make going to l'm the choir for.
- 9. play He any instrument can't musical.
- 10. songs sing to The choir is going beautiful.
- 11. well guitar plays really Malak the.
- 12. stage Name performing on loves.
- 13. is a hot oven for pottery hard making A kiln.

......

- 14. photographer like Do being a you?

- 15. clothes How acout your designing own?
- 16. uncomfortable It's clay to have my hands on.

Choose the correct answer:

Vocabulary

- 1. Your hands get messy when you try (animation junk modeling pottery)
- 2. I can use leaves or (roth shells bracelets) to make some outdoor art
- 3. Mayar uses colored (bunds = rocks cloth) to make jewelry.
- Khaled uses his computer skills to make an (imagination animation explanation). He makes pictures move.
- 5. Huda uses plastic bottles and lids in (junk modeling designing clothes making jewelry).
- if you (11, 12...) red and yellow, you make orange.
- 7. If I do something creative, I (f 1 1 ind make) happy.
- A person whose job is playing music is called a (teacher musician doctor).
- 9. You should wear an (.d sm apron earring) over your clothes for your pottery project.
- Changing photos to make them better is called (editing advertisement exhibition).
- 11. ((expectation of the street of the stre
- Nadine and Sarah sing at the school (film exhibition concert). They make a good choir.
- Stainless steel is a very strong (material rock stone).
- 1. A (writer but ble scalptor) is a liquid ball full of air.
- 15. It's usually (dark quiet sunny) in the morning.
- 16. When a mirror shows an image, it (watches understands reflects) the image.
- 17. He is a (sculptor ret poet) He wrote lots of poems.

Unit 7

- 18. If you put your brush in water, you (dry clean paint) it
- 19. The (kiln lump paint) makes the clay hard and strong.





2 Choose the correct answer:

(The Zero Conditional)

- 1. If it is cold, (wear wears wearing) a jacket.
- 2. If it's too hot outside, we can (stays staying stay) inside the house
- 3. If my little brother (was is were) hungry, he cries.
- 4. When you (finished finishes finish) your homework, give it to your teacher.
- When dad (doesn't didn't don't) water the plants, they die.
- 6. When she runs, she (is feeling feels was feeling) happy.
- 7. When Lara (meets met are meeting) her friends, they have a good
- 8. When I (walk walks walking) in the park, I get lots of ideas for outdoor art.
- If it starts to rain, (use using uses) an umbrella
- 10. How (did does do) you feel when you are painting?
- 11. If it's sunny tomorrow, we (can won't can't) go to the park.

Choose the correct answer:

(Prepositional Phrases)

- Nadine loves performing (on in under) stage.
- 2. Singers often get nervous (after before on) a concert.
- 3. He never puts his cello (behind in after) the door.
- 4. I try to breathe slowly (before after behind) hard work to help me relax.
- 5. The tiger ran (on through for) the forest.
- Hana goes to the beach (in into on) sunny days.
- 7. I go home (before through after) school.

Step Ahead

- 8. Sama puts her pencils (in at for) the pencil case
- 9 You should eat healthy food. It's good (to the state of the state
- 10. My friends came (on into for) my room and looked for my guitar.

Write an email to your friend Nadine:

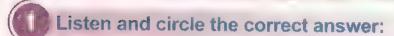
(4Ms)

Tell her about your school concert. Your favorite musical instrument and your musical skills. Tell her how you performed on that day. Your email address is sobaila@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nadine@school.com.



Total 30

بينا الاستهاع موجودان احر الدباب.





(4Ms)

- 1. There are different (shows races competitions champions) from time to time.
- 2. They want children between the ages of (five and fifteen-six and fifteen four and fifteen seven and seventeen) to send their creative works.
- 3. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city (museum castle park bank)!
- 4. Children could (hold stand send draw) a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story or any other creative work.

Listen and answer the questions:



- 1. When was the party?
- 2. What did Fatma and her friends do in the party?



Connect Plus 6 >

Test 1

Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

story - animation - activities - express - technology

How do you like to ①

different creative ②

prefer using ③

to get you excited If you

yourself? There are many

to get you excited If you

yourself? There are many

to get you excited If you

yourself? There are many

to get you excited If you

prefer using ③

Noving pictures can tell a great

story! There are so many things you can do!

Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

English is an interesting language. It's spoken by a lot of people in different countries. Still, more people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult. But, if you don't use it, you will forget it. English language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world. If you ever think of going to foreign countries, you will find English more and more useful. Good English also gives you better chances for work.

Choose the correct answer:

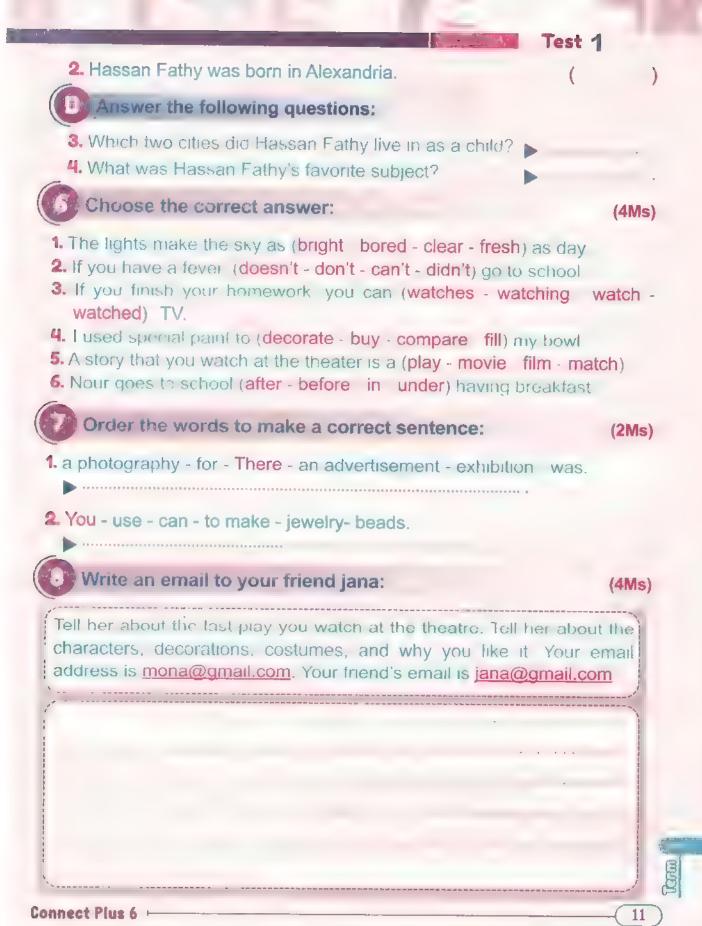
- 1. The English language is (enjoyable difficult boring uncomfortable).
- 2. The underlined word "it" refers to (the world people English country).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. Where is English spoken?
 - 4. What will happen if you don't use English?

The Reader - Hasson Fathy: A biography

A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian teacher. (

10 Step Ahead



Unit 2 Henral



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

school - PC - cartoons - light - apartment

Hi, I'm Sama. My family and I moved to a new last Monday. I love my new bedroom. It's very and comfortable. I have a long desk for my so | can do my homework in my bedroom. I can watch with my friends in my bedroom, too.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

milkshakes – blade – chops – saves – motor

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it 1 (2) motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make (9)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

desk - electricity - whiteboard - outage - cable

My name is Mariam. I had a strange day at school yesterday. My class and ! We were looking at the interactive had a power 1 , when suddenly all the information disappeared. We and tried a different power socket, but got an extension 3 that wasn't working either. We knew that there was no





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

computer - microwave - broke - blender - fix

John's family had a robot called Bill. The Bill suddenly down. It fell to the ground, and its lights went out. The family started trying to do things by themselves. They learned how to use a start to make milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the start to heat the food. Dad tried to learn how to his car, but it was too difficult.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

put away - tidy up - mop up - put out - hang up

Hi, I'm Dina. We are very	busy today. It's time to cle	an up our house Mom
will ①	the clothes. My sister wil	l @
the garbage. My brother	will '3	his room. I will
	the dishes and clean up t	he kitchen. We will all
help each other		



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

milk - chin - couch - attention - stroke

Cats need lots of to feel safe. You should a cat by moving your hand over it's back or under its . Cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the ! Cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day.



1	
11	M A

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

hole - house - vacation - memories - spare

Hady was on a school ①	yesterday He went to visit his	S
	looked for his old books and photos. He found	d
them in the 2	room. He was very glad because he has	
great 3	of growing up in this (4)	
He found things from his o	hildhood.	
		-

Read and complete the text with the words from the box: Activity Book

decorations - food - house - living room - party - presents

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special				
1	for her. If we don't tell her	, it If be a big surprise.		
Uncle Amir and his	family are arriving on Friday If the	ney bring lots of		
2	we'll hide them in my room. Mo	m is going to cook lots		
of special 3	. If the weather is no	ot too hot, we'll all eat		
outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're joing to use mom's				
new food mixr D	ad is buying some special 🕘 🧪	for the		
house. It will look i	really pretty when we put lots of lie	gnt, around the		
5	Everyone will come to our I	nouse in hour before		
lunch. Then Dad w	rill drive to Grar ama's 🌀	to collect her		
It's going to be gre	eat!			

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book

Granddad: Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home. I've washed the dishes.

Rasha : OK, Granddad I'll 1 the dishes and then

Granddad : Good. I'll 3 the garbage It's too heavy

for you to carry.

Rasha: Thanks, Granddad Would you like me to 4

Unit 2 Hesham's toys and put them in his room? Granddad: Yes, please. Could you 5 your dad's jacket in the hall cupboard? : OK. When we've finished this, I'll 6. Rasha the orange juice from the table. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Sarah : Hr. Nada Would you like a robot to help you around the house? Nada : Hi, Sarah. Yes, it will be a great idea. : What does it 1like? Sarah : It has two round blue eyes, two arms and blue body. Nada : What it is made ②? Sarah : It's made from plastic and 3 Nada Sarah : What can it do? : It can pick up my books and (4) my room. Nada Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book Salma : I want to buy some plants. Manar : That's a good idea. : Where can I buy an indoor plant? Salma Manar : You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets. 10 and garden centers. : Where should I put my indoor plant? Salma : In a ② place with a lot of light. Manar

Manar : Yes. You can feed them with fertilizer.

Salma : How often should I 49 the plant?

Manar: It's better to give them too little water than too much.

Salma: Thanks for your help.

Manar : You are welcome.

Connect Plus 6 =



Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. his room - Scree . - his brother - shares - Maged - with.

...

2. the piano - I - play - sometimes - room - in my.

......

3. books - swapping - Noha - comic - likes.

4. cartoons - Kareem - TV - on watches.

.....

5. violin - you - Can - the - play?

- 1

6. of - blender - the - is - What - made?

7. illness - from - people - protects - A vaccine.

8. kitchen - up - cleaning - Omar - the - is

.....

9. messy – bedroom – very – Your – is.

10. flowers - and plants - Turtles - eat - like to.

.....

11. hair - have - Cats - soft - a lot of.

12. yesterday - We - outage - had - power - a.

13. for - your blender - use - you - do - What?

>?

14. clean – should – I – How – my – indoor plant?

?

15. live – in – apartment – an – Do – you?

13 Choose the correct answer:

Vocabulary

- 1. Mona sleeps in her (bedroom dining room living room).
- 2. I like (swapping playing watching) comic books.
- 3. I (watch cartoons do push-ups play the violin) on TV.
- 4. She likes playing (volleyball tennis chess). It's a board game.
- 5. My brother is very (lazy sporty funny). He plays a lot of volleyball.
- 6. I (play chat move) to my friends online.
- 7. The (motor milkshake blade) is a drink that is often made with milk and ice cream.
- **8.** The (invention vaccine appliance) is something which protects people from illness.
- 9. A (motor blade glass) is the part of a machine that makes it move.
- 10. Amira had a (power cable socket) outage in her school yesterday.
- 11. There is an (electricity interactive extension) whiteboard in my class.
- 12. She uses the (hairdryer refrigerator microwave) to heat the food.
- 13. My father needs to (cook change iron) the car battery to go to work.
- 14. I (tidy up put out put away) my room on weekends.
- 15. She hangs up her (garbage clothes dishes) before she goes to bed.
- 16. Could you (hang pick mop) up the water, please?
- 17. A (wall brick room) is a small block for building.
- 18. We don't need electricity for a (bicycle refrigerator laptop).
- 19. The cat needs a scratch post to sharpen its (ears claws eyes).
- 20. (Cats Turtles Lions) like to eat flowers and plants.



Choose the correct answer:

Structures

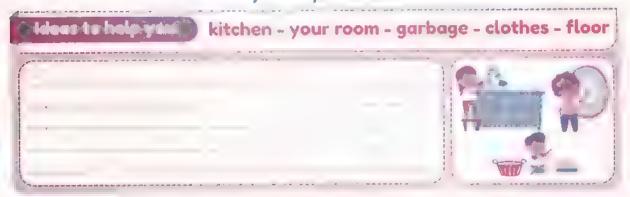
- 1. You can sometimes buy indoor plants at a florist. (This is This means that) a shop which sells cut flowers for the home.
- 2. You have to water your plants gently. (This is This means that) you add the water slowly.



Unit 2

- 3. You should buy your cat a collar. (This means that This is) a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck.
- 4. If we (have has had) fruit and milk, we will make a milkshake.
- 5. Ali is cleaning (in up away) the kitchen.
- 6. She can make a hot drink if she (boil boiled boils) water in this kettle.
- 7. Farida has put (through away out) the dishes.
- 8. If it's sunny tomorrow, we can (go goes going) to the park.
- 9. Fares needs to pick (on In up) his toys from the floor
- 10. If I put food in the refrigerator, it (is are will) be cold.
- 11. Dad has put (up out away) the garbage.
- 12. She (will won't may) use the laptop to do her homework. I'm not sure.
- 13. People (will get won't get doesn't get) sick if they have a vaccine.
- 14. Mom uses the blender (to for in) make delicious soups.
- 15. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll (making to make make) a smoothie with fruit and ice!
- 16. Mom can take you to school (and but if) you ask her now.
- 17. We'll play video games with the games console if my friends (come coming comes) to my house.
- 18. Can you put (up in away) the dishes?
- 19. If you arrive early, you can (gets get getting) a good seat.
- 20. If she (ate eats eating) a big breakfast, she won't be hungry later.
- 21. His teacher will be angry with him if he (comes don't come doesn't come) to the class on time.
- 22. If he eats too much, he (feels will feel won t feel) comfortable.
- 15 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"Chores you help with at home"



18

Unit 2 Test 2



نصا الاستماع موجودان أخر الكتاب.



Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. Turtles like to eat (trees birds flowers insects) and plants.
- 2. You can buy special turtle (drink food juice milk).
- 3. The heat lamp is a special light to keep the turtle nice and (light cold sick warm).
- 4. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, (dark light bright cold) place.



Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

1. What did Tamer and Noha do last week?



2. Where did Noha find the message?



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

(4Ms)

Mazen: Do you remember your parent's old house, dad?

Dad : Of course.

Mazen: How long did you live there?,

Dad: I lived there for about 20 years.

Mazen: Can you tell me about the history of that house?

Dad : Of course, it was built from ① and stone.

Mazen: Was it a big house?

Dad: Yes, it was very big. There were six @

in it

Mazen: How 3 people lived there?

Dad : There were eight people.

Mazen : Is the house different now?

Dad : Not really, the wais are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm

glad it hasnit changed because I have such great 4

of growing up there too.



Read the behavior text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

standing in the Room of the month of the mon

Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The undertined in the refers to the (chickens cats neighbors hobbies).
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. What was medically all on her neighbor visited her?
 - 4. What was Mrs Safaa interested in?

The Reader - A Wonderful Surpille

- A-Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)
 - 1. Mayar listened to the radio in the car. ()
 - 2. Asser saw h 11.1 Inside the garage ()
- Answer the following questions:
 - 3. What was the shovel look like?
 - 4. What did Asser (2015) and die concert?



the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. Was living room bedroom bathroom spare room is a room used for visitors or to put things in.
- 2. (a) showing to the (dentist teacher nurse vet, one a year for vaccinations.
- 3. My in var. 3 ked me to (clean up pick up hang up get up) the kitchen.
- 4. If it's cold tomorrow, I (will won't didn't would to a my coat
- 5. if I had is having = has have) a tile to the compositive.
- 6. fisher has free time, she (may will can won't with us. I am not



Cruder the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

- 1. Fire true the microwave heating fire I
- 2. y put please away Can the co.

2



White a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

"Caring for your cats"

eat – meal – vet – drink – sleep – equipment – feel at home



Unit 3 Revision

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

boarding - timetable - flexible - reindeer - subjects

Classrooms are not the same in every school. In Siberia, the children study school like math, science, and computing. The timetable is and take them to where there is food. Also, some children go away to school.

These children are away from their families for many months every year.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

panels - floods - subjects - electricity - ICT

Aban lives in Bangladesh. His school is on a boat because sometimes in his country there are ①

There are 20 children in his class.

There are solar ②

on the roof of the boat to make electricity.

They need electricity for the computers in their ③

classes.

Aban's favorite ④

are science, math and art

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

instruments - songs - drama - music - costumes

Nadia goes to 1 Club where they sing songs and play 2 They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents

Amir enjoys going to 3 club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special 4 for the actors to wear.





Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

concert - swimming - competitions - recipe - cooking

Samer goes to a ①	club	Every week, they make a
meal from a different cou	ntry. They take photos	of their meals for a special
②	book. They can take	the food home to eat with
their families.		
Malek goes to a 3	club th	ree times a week. It makes
him healthy and strong. I		

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

enjoy - palace - scripts - scribe - busy

I'm Nebsin's younger brother Babu. When I'm older, I'd like to be a like my father. He goes to the Pharaoh's every day and he writes about everything that happens there. It's a very interesting job because the palace is a place and a lot happens there. It's an important job, too, because the tell us about the daily life at the palace. I like reading and I enjoy writing, so I think I'd enjoy being a scribe.

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book

Nader: Hi, Alaa! Is studying the past important?

Alaa : Hı, Nader of all, I believe that studying the

past helps us understand the present.

Nader: What is your opinion about history?

Alaa : In my 2 history helps us understand our

society and other cultures.

Nader: Why do you think that?

Alaa : Because we learn about life in the past, important artists,

scientists, and politicians. We learn about how and why

a has changed over the years. To

up, studying history is an important part of our education.



Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. are green roofs Why the environment for good?
- 2. to reindeer help look after Nomadic children.
- 3. boarding go away schools Some children to.
- 4. same every school the Classrooms in are not.
- 5. uniform wear every school my l school day.
- 6. bedroom sometimes My messy is brother's.
- 7. goes with his friends Fares often swimming.

- 8. tennis Playing · me makes healthy · feel.
- 9. makes club hungry Cooking me always!
- 10. make plays Sad me unhappy!
- 11. lunch do Where they eat?
- 12. about is Green City School What special?
- 13. take to does it How long school get to?
- 14. a new was There metal bridge.

- 15. every day should in schools Students do sports.
- 6. healthy you keeps sports Playing
- 16. healthy you keeps sports Playing.

Choose the correct answer:

Vocabulary



- 1. The Shagara at School Projects believes that roof gardens can help students in (city village) schools.
- 2. Green, outdoor places are great for learning because they make people (tired calm) and healthy.
- 3. In the past, the children had to go to boarding school, and had to (come home late at night be away from their families).
- 4. Adel's favorite (sport timetable subject) at school is ICT.
- 5. The (reindeer mobile sled) is an animals that lives in the North of Siberia.
- 6. The (green roof boarding school normal classroom) is a great idea, especially in cities.
- 7. Amr goes to (cooking swimming music) club to sing and play the guitar.
- 8. It's easier to travel on a (bike car sled) when there is a lot of snow and ice.
- The library is green because all it's electricity comes from solar (channels
 canals panels).
- 10. We (recycle encourage stop) you to walk or cycle to school. It's better for the environment.
- 11. The climbing (frames farms forms) are made mostly with recycled materials.
- 12. This mountain is very (deep low steep). It's not easy to climb.
- 13. The bridge (built collapsed repaired) during a storm. It fell down suddenly.
- 14. In my (opinion finally first), all children should learn music at school.

GR MM R REVISION

Choose the correct answer:

Structures

1. Mustafa (c:) plays football. He likes sports.
2. My aunt (live - lives - living) in Cairo.
3. Amr (is alw i, -) good to his friends
4. Farha (neve) helps in the kitchen
5. How does Aban (go - goes - going) to school?
6. He (has use -) cheese for breakfast.
7. Taqwa doesn't often () her friends at weekends.
8. Lilly (alway:) lunch in the cafeteria.
9. She (never -) have to wear a school uniform.
10. I (walk sore - walk) to work
11. We (often according to the city center.
12. Sports (make - makes - making) us healthy.
13. (Listenia, -) to music makes me feel relaxed.
14. Getting a good grade at school makes (my) proud
15. Reading stories (-) me excited
16. (Swim) makes him healthy and strong
17. Photography makes (my - I - me) excited.
18. Painting () me feel happy.
19. Marwa said that she () like chocolate
20. Lina said that the bridge (- collapses)!
21. They said that they () that sound suddenly
22. The teacher said that visiting old people (were) a great idea
23. Sarah (tolu -) that her letter had helped everybody!
24. Lina told her friends that she (- sees) engineer
and builders at the river.
25. They said that they (- , - build) a new bridge.

Term Term

Step Ahead

10

Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"Going to school clubs is fun"

music club - musical instrument - cooking club - make a meal - swimming club - healthy and strong - drama club - act plays







بما الا عليميع موجودان احر الكناب.



Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. Sagda goes to school from (Friday Moncard Londery Wednesday) to Thursday.
- 2. She usually brings her lunch from (store supermarket home school)
- 3. School finishes at (8 am 3 pm 3 am 8 pm).
- 4. Sagda likes (Art English Math ICT).

2

Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

1. What will happen if you play sports?



2. When do Hamdy and his friends go to the club?



Connect Plus 6 --



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

learn - changed - cultures - important - History

We can learn a lot by studying the past. helps us understand our society and other because we about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has over the years.

Read the following text and then answer the questions below:

Mustafa likes sports. He goes to a sports club every weekend. He likes playing football. Football is the most famous sport in the world. Mustafa always plays football with his friends. Playing football makes him healthy and fit. He also loves watching football games on TV. His favorite team is Liverpool. His favorite football player is Mohamed Salah. He is the best football player in the world. Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up.

Choose the correct answer:

- Mustafa always plays football with his ("teachers).
- 2. Playing football makes Mustafa (heathy ill ·) and fit.
- Answer these questions:
 - 3. Where does Mustafa play football?
- 4. Who does Mustafa want to be like when he grows up?

The Reader - New Baris

- A- Read and write T (True) or F (Fasse):
- 1. The builders found a well in the desert.
- 2. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and windcatchers to make the houses cool.



the following questions:

Where did Hassan Fathy design a village?

Why did the farmers look for water?

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

The (- school) is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions.

The engineers and builders (r - med - collapsed - broke - pointed) the bridge.

Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

tried - - to push - the - away - snake.

never - school - go to - Fridays - on - ve.

Write an email to your friend Ahmed:

(4Ms)

Tell him about your School Open Day. Tell him who you invited and how the day was. Your email address is n zenahotmail com. Your friend's email is ahmed@gmail.com.

Unit (4) Revision

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

expensive - disabilities - comic - movable - built

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he
a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a
elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a
book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about
about
...

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

hearing - confident - problems - wear - video

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

information - advertisement - special - bakery - website

पुल्पण ।

Step Ahead

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Reem : Would you like to come with me? I want to

buy a present for my mom.

Mazen: Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her ②

Reem: No, it isn't her birthday. I just want to buy her a

for being the best mom. I'm going to use my birthday money

from last month.

Talia : That's a great idea. My morn always says, "Kindness is

important", and that's a kind thing to do. What do you want to

buy her?

Reem : I don't know I want you to think with me and give me your

Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. someone shouldn't to People be unkind.
- 2. and wears is glasses Shady tall.

- 3. her teeth wears get straight to help = braces
- 4. you day What hear every do?
- 5. finger spelling learn people do Where?
- 6. do What you computer games think about?
- ?
- 7. cartoons think funny are.
- 8. do playing football think about – you?
- · . . ?
- 9. like look you do What?
- 10. music to listening love l.



Choose the correct answer:

Vocabulary

- 1. People shouldn't be (kind mean good) to someone because they're different.
- 2. Reem uses a (braces hearing aid wheelchair). She can't walk well.
- 3. Lara wears (hearing aid glasses braces). She can't see well.
- 4. Amina has a (glasses braces hearing aid). She has problems hearing.
- Khaled wears (glasses hearing aid braces). He wants to get his teeth straight.
- 6. The opposite of straight is (curly comfortable soft).
- 7. Prosthetic arms and legs can be (cheap easy expensive) to make, but David made his prosthetic arm cheaply with plastic bricks.
- 8. Amira showed Fares (kindness kind) by inviting him to join her group of friends.
- 9. That's a (kind kindness) thing to do. Your mom will love a present.
- 10. I'm (into to on) sports. I play volleyball at my local club.
- 11. Hana receives a new (talker walker sticker) every year to help her walk.
- 12. Hana (decided decorated divided) her new walker with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.
- 13. He can't walk, he (crawls walks runs) along the ground.
- 14. Hana is a very helpful girl. She always (receives saves crawls) the day.
- 15. My sister is (to on into) photography. She takes awesome photos.

7

Choose the correct answer:



1. I saw an (advertise - advertisement) for the new bakery in town.



2. We could get their address and some more (inform - information).



My mom always says, "(Kind - Kindness) is important."



- 4. He asked (I know did I know if I knew) how to use this machine.
- 5. My dad (asked told said) if I liked school.



Unit 4

- 6. He asked (if knew did I know if she knew) how to speak a second language.
- 7. The teacher asked me (why I wanted I wanted why wanted I) to be an engineer.
- 8. Nadeen asked (I if thought if I thought I thought) the house was very small for them.
- 9. Farha asked if we (has had have) a farm in the countryside.
- 10. He asked me (what I knew I knew I what knew) about finger spelling.
- 11. She asked (she if could if could if she could) do American Sign Language.
- 12. She asked (if Tarek liked if liked Tarek if liked) sending text messages.
- 13. He (told asked said) what Gameela and Dalia did after school.
- 14. I asked (they knew did they know if they knew) how to do American Sign Language.
- 15. She asked me (I if could if could if I could) hear the birds singing outside.
- 16. The leader is the (powerful most powerful more powerful) person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen.
- 17. Who is the (most famous more famous famous) singer in your country?
- 18. Mariam is the (most intelligent intelligent more intelligent) student in my class.
- 19. Who is the (tall tallest taller) person in your family?
- 20. You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the (smallest smaller small), can make a difference.
- 21. What's the (more dangerous most dangerous dangerous) animal in the world?
- 22. Everest is the (higher high highest) mountain in the world.
- 23. Mustafa is the (fastest faster fast) in his team.
- 24. Muhammad is the (calm calmest calmer) when he's working.

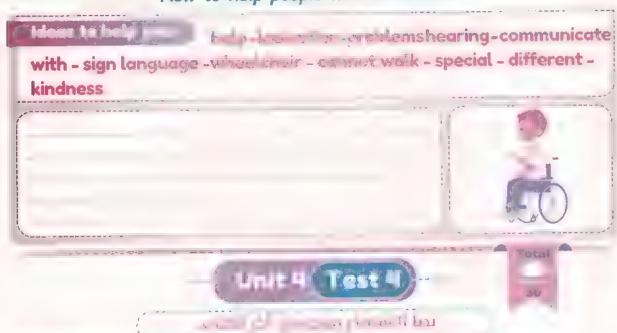
Connect Plus 6

33



8 Write a paragraph of () words using the following elements:

"How to help people with disabilities"





(4Ms)

- 1. We are not the same. Everyone is (-- - - - tell t bad different)
- 2. Aser is tall, but I'm very (Simple 1 Short tall).
- 3. I have straight hair, but Yara has a (..., LIDWH dark blond) hair
- 4. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at (painting swimming music sports).
- 2 Listen and answer the questions:
- (2Ms)

- 1. What did Mr. Kamal ask?
- 2. What's Adam's favorite way to communicate?
- Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

Mrs Fatima: Good morning.

34

Student: Good morning Mrs. Nada.

Step Ahead

De aux-

Mrs Fatima: How are we different to each other?

Salma : That's an easy question, we are not the sale Alice 3 24

and I am very short.

A . Adel uses a

well.

Menna : I wear because I can (see a

Salma : Habiba wears (3) to help her teeth get straight.

Mrs Fattma: So, people should be kind to each other



Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Kindness is important. Being kind to others costs no arrow should try to show the quality of kindness to the people is a respective you are kind to others, you become a better with are kind, you will remain in the hearts of people for there is your kindness will help you when you are alone, sad or in the respective your hard times. People will always help you and stadd by your must make sure that our behavior and actions do not here.



Choose the correct answer:

- 2. Everyone should try to show the quality of (laziness illness kindness sickness) to the people around them.



Answer these questions:

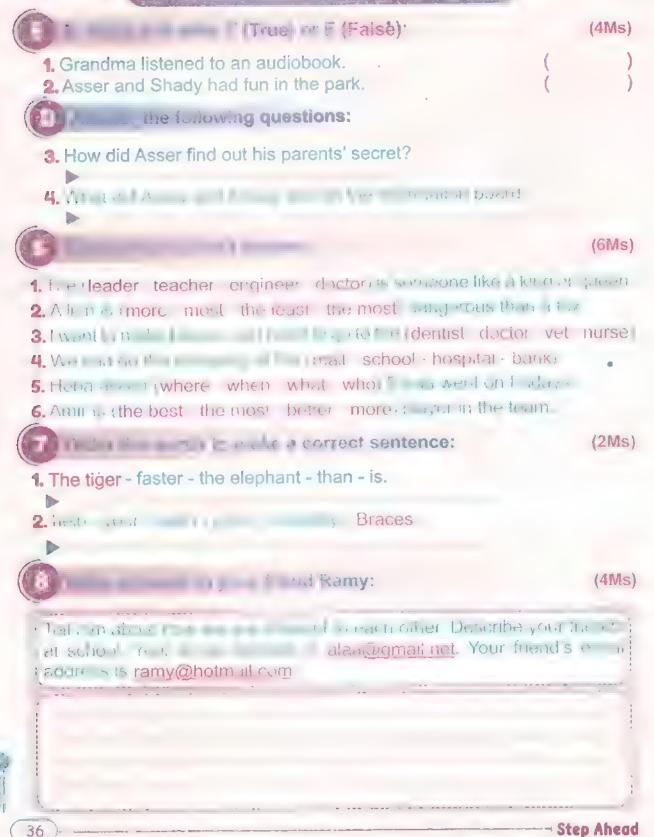
3. What must we make sure of?

.....

4. What makes people help you and stand with you



The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise



Part 2



Revision Tests



Listen and circle the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. A ser Kapoorus a (painter scientist sci. sci. itactor)
- 2. Arish Kapoor was born in (France England India America) in 1954.
- 3. Anis i Kapoor uses (copper silver guld stainless steel) in Tall Tree and the Eye.
- 4. City tess ifeel is a very (weak strong expensive cheap) material.
- 2 Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. Why don't we look the same?
- 2. Thould people be unkind to someone because they're different?
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

appliance - invented - smoothie - blender - Television

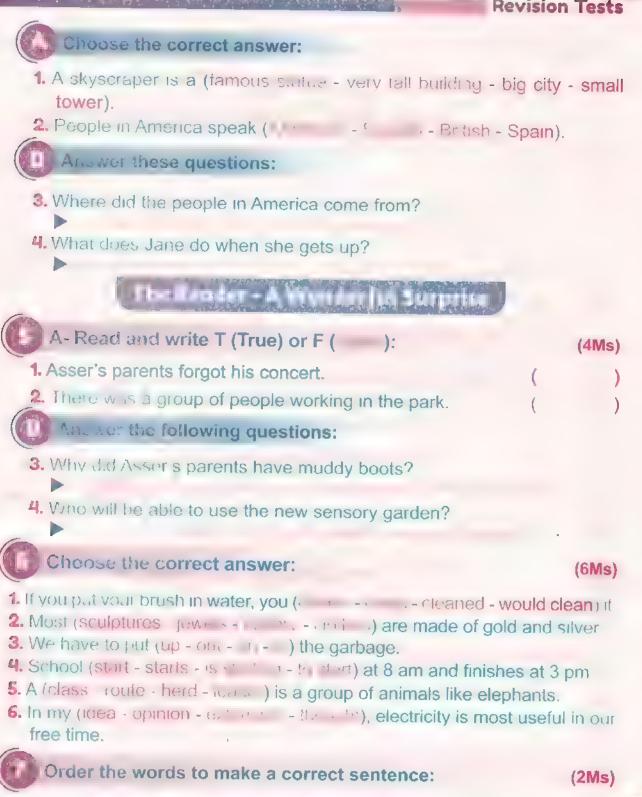
Read the Miswing text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

M. name is Jane Tm American. Hive in New York. It's a very big oil, it's famous for its skyscrapers. I live in a very tall scraper on the late floor it is ually get up at 7 o'clock every morning. I tidy my room and make my bed. I often polish my shoes, then wash and put on my school uniform and I get my books ready to begin a school day. I ride my bicycle to school. On my way, I pass the Statue of Liberty. People in America came from different countries all over the world. They are of different nationalities. But we are all Americans now and we all speak English language.

STATE OF

→ Step Ahead

39



1. Arabic - children - All - at school - should - learn.

2. look - What - like - does - snake - the?

Connect Plus 6



Write a para

Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

"My favorite musical instrument"

Ideas to help your play - guitar - talented - concerts - musician



Revision Test



نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب،

Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. A / An (English French Polish-American Indian) man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922.
- 2. He put a sharp blade in the (top middle end bottom) of a tall glass.
- 3. He added a small (engine motor pipe button).
- 4. He used his new invention to make (tea coffee milkshakes milk).

Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. When did Reem move into a new apartment?
- 2. Why is Reem so happy?



(4Ms)

Ahmed: Have you heard about Anish Kapoor?

Rana: Yes, I have. He is a . He was born in India in 1954.

Ahmed: What is his famous 2

?

40 Step Ahead



Rana : Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor.

Ahmed: What does he use in Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture?

Ahmed: Why did he use it?

Rana : Because it is very strong 4



Read the following text and then answer the questions below: " !!!

Wael was sick and Sherif went to visit him. While they were talking, the doctor came. "What's the matter?" asked the doctor. "I've got a terrible pain in my stomach," Wael replied. The doctor felt his stomach, then he looked into his mouth. He walked to the other side of Wael's bed and said, "Stay in bed. You'll be better tomorrow if you don't eat any more sweets." Sherif asked the doctor, "Please, how did you know what was wrong with my friend? "Easy," said the doctor, "I saw a lot of sweets under his bed."



- 1. Wael's got a pain in his (neck knee head stomact).
- 3. Sherif is Wael's (friend = brother = cousin uncle).

Answer these questions:

- 3. What's wrong with Wael?
- 4. How did the doctor know what was wrong with him?

The Bender - A Wasslerful Sampasa

- A- Read and write T (True) or F (Faise):
 - 1. Hassan Fathy's father was an architect.
 - 2. Hassan Fathy loved drawing and painting.
 - Answer the following questions:
 - 3. Where did Hassan study architecture?

Revision Tests

4. What are the special features of Hassan Fathy's buildings?



Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. (Photography Painting Acting Drawing) is the activity or job of taking photographs.
- 2. Ayman (often walk walks often often walks walk often) to school.
- 3. Green roofs are (bad sad great harmful) for the environment.
- 4. I have lunch in the (library classroom playground cafeteria) at school.

 It's a place for eating and drinking.
- 5. Mr Ayman (said asked talked replied) us in what ways we communicated with each other.
- 6. Sleep eight hours a day. It's good (m for at of) you.



Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

- 1. to make use can What a collage you?
- 2. always my room I tidy up weekends on.



Write an email to your friend Asmaa:

(4Ms)

Tell her about the chores you and your family do every weekend.

Your email address is heba(arr::ail com, and your friend's email is asmaa@yahoo.com.



42

→ Step Ahead





تصا الاستماع موجودان أحر الكتاب.



Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. Give your cat lots of attention so it feels (hungry thirsty safe sleapy).
- 2. Cats need to sleep (14 15 18 20) hours every day.
- 3. Cats like a (warm cool cold hot) comfortable bed.
- 4. (Juice Milk Water Milkshake) is better for cats.



Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. What does Sarah think is most useful in our free time?
- 2. Who does Sarah play video games with?



Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

socket - cable - power - disappeared - interactive

It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage. We were looking at the whiteboard, when suddenly all the information.

! The teacher got an extension and tried a different power but there was no electricity.



Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

One day, an old man and a young man were walking in a place full of trees. Suddenly they saw a lion in front of them. The young man ran to a tree and climbed it quickly. The old man tried to climb the tree too, but he was too old to climb it. He fell back to the ground. The old man knew that lions don't eat dead bodies, so he lay on the ground and didn't move. The lion came and smelt him and went away. The young man came down from the tree and the old man stood up. "Did the lion say anything to you?" the young man asked. His friend said, "It told me to look for a better friend."

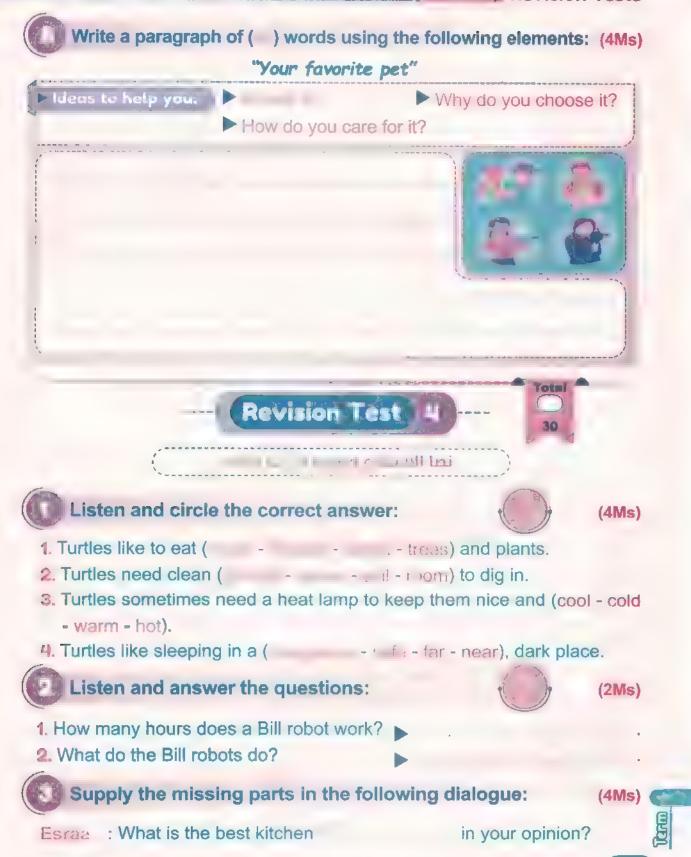


Connect Plus 6 -

42

- (6Ms)
 -) cycle to school.
 - 5. Nada goes home (before a letter letter) school.
 - 6. The school (shoes bag up) is clothes that are the same for every student.
- Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)
 - is be There going to next week a concert.
 - 2. cats the vet How often go to should?

45



Connect Plus 6 -

Revision Tests

Aya : I think the ② ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a

smoothie with fruit and ice!

Esraa : Who 3 the blender?

Aya : A Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the

blender in 1922.

Esraa : What are blenders made of?

Aya : Blenders are made of plastic, glass and (a)



Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

My friend Fawzi always says that he knows everything. Whenever a name is said, he says he knows the person very well. I believed him until one day I found that he was a big liar. One day, he visited me when I was with my uncle Mr Ali Rady, who is a famous writer. Before I introduced him to my uncle, his eyes fell on one of my uncle's novels which was on the table. At once, he said that he knew the writer of the novel very well and that he was one of his best friends. He also said Mr Ali never wrote a book before discussing its idea with him. At last my uncle introduced himself to my friend who was very ashamed and left the place without saying a word



Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr Ali writes (films - reports - songs - novels).

2. The underlined word "him" refers to (the writer - Mr Ali - Fawzi - uncle)



Answer these questions:

3. How did the writer find out that his friend was a liar?



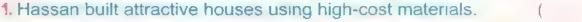


The Reader - Harma Farry: A Licy within



A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)



2. Traditional Egyptian homes had domed roofs and mud bricks. (





Answer the following questions:

- 3. Which countries can you see Hassan Fathy's buildings in?
- 4. What awards did Hassan Fathy receive?



Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. Anish Kapoor is a (tailor sailor singer sculptor). He made amazing sculptures.
- 2. I think we need to clean (over in up on) the kitchen.
- 3. A (subject mobile timetable class) is a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it.
- 4. Cats need attention This means (this that these those) they need their owners to be interested in them.
- 5. Some people have (electricity electric interactive power) cars.
- 6. People (aren't won't weren't didn't) get sick if they have a vaccine.

Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

- 1. the vet to go should every year Cats.
- 2. do you How at communicate school?

2



Write an email to your friend Rana:

(4Ms)

Tell her about your favorite school subjects, your friends and what you hope to be in the future. Your email address is sama@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is rana@gmail.com.



Revision Test (6)



نصا الاستماع موحودان آخر الكناب.



Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. Some classes have their lessons in a (park garden zoo class) on the roof of the school.
- 2. Green roofs are gardens on the (bottom-middle-top-end) of a building.
- 3. Green roofs bring nature into the (town city country school).
- 4. Green roofs are great for the (nature school class environment).



Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

- 1. How is tennis useful?
- 2. Where can you play tennis?



Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

claws - vaccinations - doctor - vet - stroke

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should (1) it. A cat needs a scratch post to sharpen it's (2) should go to the (3) once a year for (4).

on. Cats

These stop them from getting sick.



Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are many different sports. Some of them are played on land like volleyball and others are played in water like swimming. There are some dangerous sports like motor racing and parachuting which is played in the air.

There are sports which are done by two persons like judo and others which are played by two teams like basketball. The most popular sport in the world is football. The players have to practice hard to win.



48

→ Step Ahead



- 1. The most popular sport is (volleyball football to to the state of the state
- 2. (Judo handhall Parachuting Crysmin and) is a water sport.
- Anoner these questions:
 - 3. Which sports are dangerous?
 - 4. How can the players win?

The Reader - A wonderful surprise

A- Read and write T (True) or F (Sales):

(4Ms)

- 1. Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. ,
- 2. It's difficult for people in wheelchairs to enjoy in the garden.
- Answer are forcewing questions:
 - 3. What's a sensory garden?
 - 4. Which things in the sensory garden can people touch?

Choose the correct answer:

(6Ms)

- 1. The blender is the best kitchen (medicine appliance vaccine cr).
- 2. Ashraf asked what (are they they are they were were tray) going to do.
- 3. A (doctor teacher vet hunter) catches or kills wild animals.
- 4. January is often (colder the coldest cold coldest) month of the year in Egypt.
- 5. I'm (worried keen interested sad) on walking with my family and friends.
- 6. Rana asked (how what if where) I thought they were happy.

Connect Plus 6

49



Order the words to make a correct sentence:

(2Ms)

- 1. steel stainless does Kapoor - use?
- 2. for are great the environment roofs -
- 0

Write a paragraph of () words using the following elements: (4Ms)

"The robots"

feiture - Line - Long lives - 24 hours - chores







50

Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

- 1. School trips are (funny torting - -) learning experiences.
- 2. We can learn a lot by (water learning studying) new places.
- 3. School trips are a very important part of our (arc to ry farming fishing education).
- 4. We should try to go on one school trip every (a week month year).



Step Ahead

Revision Tests



Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

What is your favorite activity?



2 How do you feel when you're painting?



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

(4Ms)

Shady: Is electricity important?

Ramy: Yes, it is. We can't use 1

without electricity

Shady: What about transportation?

Ramy Bus stations and airports all 2

electricity.

Shady: What about lighting?

Ramy : We don't like 3

. So we need lighting in the

evening.

Shady: Is it important in our free time?

Ranty: Yes, it is I love playing video

with my

brother.



Basim is twelve years old. He is very interested in reading. He goes to the school library every day. Basim thinks that a good book is your best friend because it is always useful and can go with you everywhere as it is easy to carry. Basim saves money to buy new books, he also borrows some books from his friends. Basim reads different kinds of books in order not to be bored. He always tells his two sisters and friends that reading makes them think better.



Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Basim's father has (two three four five) children.
- 2. Books are (casy difficult neavy boring) to carry.

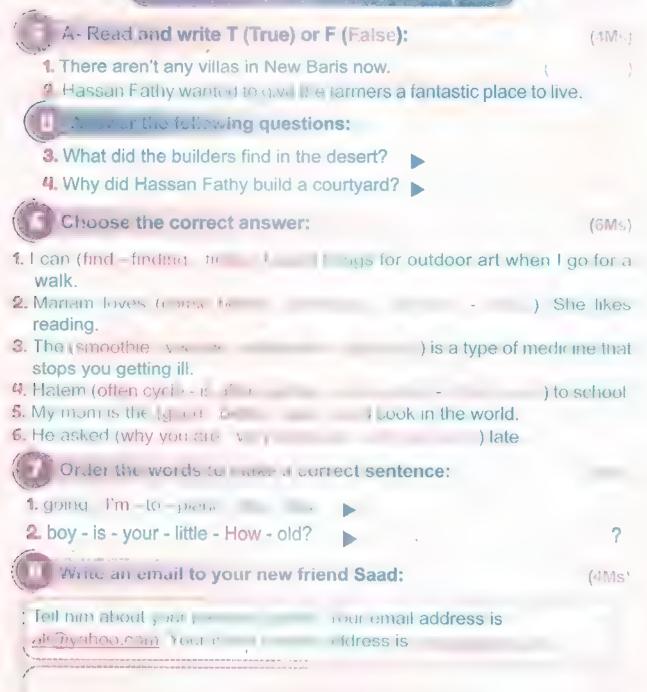


Answer these questions:

- 3. How does Basim get new books?
- 4. What does Basim tell his sisters and friends about reading?



The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise





52



Port 3

Listening Script

أنصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب الأساسي. ﴿



Test

1- There is a big art exhibition in the city museum today. You can see many creative activities there. People can try junk modeling and build a rocket or a car. They also can use clay to make a wowl or a house. They can use recycled cloth to design their own clothes. They can use beads to make beautiful jewelry like necklaces or bracelets.

Test

2- Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1945. He makes very large pieces of art for public places. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by him. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

Question |



My name is Seim. My fother bought a new apartment in a proper moved into it tast week. I was so happy because I had a new because My bedroom is very conficitable and light. I have a long desk for to do my homework in the bedroom. I can play computer make and watch cartoons in my begroom. I also love swipping continue and reading them in bed.

Onestion*

Onestion*

Test



Stephen Poplawski invented the mender in 1922. He pull a snarp blade in the bottom of a tall grap. When the blade turns it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.



In Egypt, some cases have the reason in a garden on the roof of the school. The Share and etail at the corresponding spandens and green roofs for schools in Egypt Gardens and are as a true top of a building. They bring nature process of the environment.

Question

Test

I'm Hamdy Llike playing to the late of the club to play tennis every weeks of the club to play tennis every weeks of the club to play new friends.



My name of a maprimary to Boze my frequent shoot very much We are all cafered by a continuous and a continuous eyes. Selectors of the continuous and the continuous a

Test

David Aguilar Ample (2004) (20

Question

(نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالمتطنات الملا في)



The are different competitions from time to time. Nowadays, there is a like or to show how creative children are! They want children because it is as of five and filteen to send their creative works. Their who is all appearing a big act exhibition in the city museum. There are so may different kays children can express themselves. They could send a like of a poem a story of any other creative work.

Test

Hill in Enthra. Yesterday I went to my triend Nour's birthday party. It was many akin the open an it night. Many friends came to celebrate with us. That night was very dark. Rockets of fireworks shot up into the air. Chars burn a birliantly squast the black sky. We were very happy. We are, drank and played games. It was a day to remember.



know that furties like to cat flowers and plants? You can also buy special turtle food. Turtles sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to know the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Quartien

Test

Tamer and Noha visited their grandparent's old house with their parents last week. Noha was playing with their kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Noha tried to get her, but she found some paper. It was a massage in a child's writing. Noha felt very curious.

Question





Sagda is in Grade & Sine goes to school from Sunday to Thursday. Sagda likes ICT She likes to use computers. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. She has an hour break for lunch. She usually brings her runch from home.

Test

I'm Hamay, i like playing tennis with my friends. Tennis is a great sport for me. It makes me healthy and happy. My friends and I go to the club to play tennis every weekend. If you play sports, you will have a healthy body and new friends.

Question



We are not the same, every one is different. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at music. My friend Aser is tall, but I'm very short. I have straight hair and brown eyes, but Yara has curly hair and blue eyes. It's good that everyone is different.

Test

Mr. Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Younis said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Adam said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate Question



Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. Kapoor uses stainless steel in Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture because it is a very strong material.

57

Listening



It's good that everyone is different. We don't look the same because our plantiles are different. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they re different. Our school is for everyone.



Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.



I'm Reem. We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom. It's a very light and comfortable room.



Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. Cats like a warm comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch. They need to sleep 15 hours every day. They shouldn't have much milk to drink. Water is better.



My name is Sarah I think electricity is most useful in our free time. Hove my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother Adel.



Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. They need clean soil to dig in, too. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. They like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Question





It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores.



In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means they are great for environment.

Outstian



Doing sports is very important for you body. One of these exciting sports is tennis. It makes you healthy and happy! It's fun when you meet your friends and play it in the club.

Ouestion



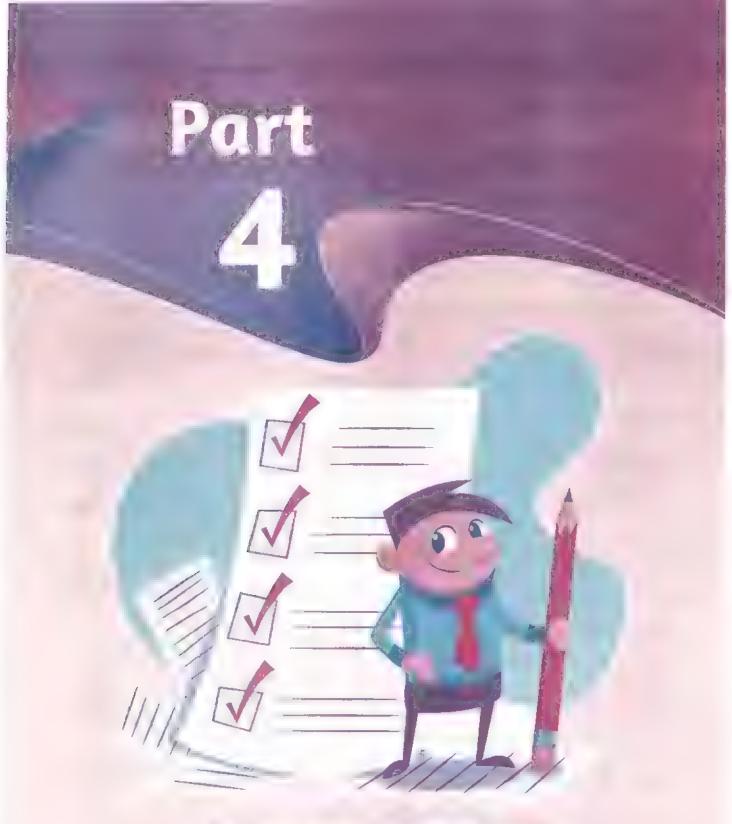
School trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. School trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. School trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.



Everyone of us has some activities to do. My favorite activity is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better

Ducation .

Term





Lesson (1)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) leaves (2) beads
 - (3) cardboard
- (4) clay (5) computer (6) cloth

😢 Supply the missing parts:

- (1) competition (2) exhibition
- (3) modeling (4) Why

Read the text and answer:

- (A) 1- creative
- 2- museum
- (B) 3- They want children between the ages of five and fifteen.
- 4- They could send a painting, a photo, a poem, a story or any other creative work.

Order the words:

- 1- You could use a computer to make an animation.
- 2- You could use plastic bottles or cardboard in junk modeling.
- You can use leaves or shells in outdoor art.
- 4- What can you use to make a collage?
- 5- How about designing and making your own clothes?
- 6- Your work will appear in a big art exhibition.
- 7- You can use recycled cloth to save money.
- 8- How do you like to express yourself?

Write an email:

From: yasmine@gmail.com To: nada@hotmail.com

Subject: The creative activities I do

Hi Nada!

I'm really creative! I can do all sorts of things, like junk modeling, pottery, designing clothes, and making collages. For junk modeling, I make new things out of old things. I've made a robot out of old cardboard boxes, a castle out of milk cartons, and a car out of plastic bottles. For pottery, I use clay to make all sorts of shapes and objects. I've made bowls, cups and vases.

I also love to design clothes. I come up

with all sorts of ideas for new outfits, and sometimes I even sew them myself. What are your favorite creative activities? Write back soon!

Love.

Yasmine

Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text:

(1) make (2) mix (3) clean (4) leave (5) use

Supply the missing parts:

- (1) painting
- (2) hands
- (3) clay

1- feel

(4) disappears

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 2- find
- 3- make
- 4- make
- 5- set 6- take 9- clean
- 7- make 8- can 10- dries
 - 11- don't make 12- is
- 13- paints
- 14- does 15- starts
- 16- come
- 17- feel 18- get 19- can't
- 20- are
- 21- disappears
- 22- rains

Order the words:

- 1- How does Noha feel when she's painting?
- 2- I prefer making things with my hands.
- 3- I like sculpture and junk modeling.
- 4- I always feel happy when I'm painting.
- 5- Have you heard about this competition, Hesham?
- 6- What are you going to make?
- 7- My favorite activity is painting.
- 8- Why doesn't Noha like pottery?
- 9- The paint disappears when I wash my
- 10- What do you do if you feel sad?

Lesson (3)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) poem
- (2) imagine
- (3) fireworks
- (4) lewels

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- poet
- 2- verse
- 3- rhyme
- 4- shoot
- 5- jewels
- 6- concert

- 7- off
- 8- hold 9- dark
 - 10- fireworks

Read the text and answer:

- 1- dark
- 2- Fireworks
- 3- It was in a park in the open air.
- 4- They stood together in the cold, black night, and they shouted and cheered.

Order the words:

- 1- The lights make the sky as bright as day.
- 2- How many lines are in each verse?
- 3- Rockets shoot up into the air.
- 4- Can you find any rhyming words?
- 5- The colors in the sky look like jewels.

S Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"A party that I liked a lot" I went to a party that I liked a lot! It was my friend Ali's birthday, and it was yesterday in the park in the open air. My friends and I played games like tag and hide-and-seek. We also had a picnic with sandwiches, chips, and juice boxes. I liked the party because I got to run and play outside with my friends. We laughed a lot and had so much fun together. The weather was sunny, and everyone was happy. It was the best party ever!

Lesson (4)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) sculptor
- (2) shapes
- (3) materials
- (4) art

Supply the missing parts:

- (1) sculptor
- (2) materials
- (3) stainless
- (4) damage

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- bubble
- 2- sphere 5- material
- 3- irregular 6- sculptor
- 4- reflects 7- material
- 8- sphere
- 9- shiny

- 10- reflect
- 11- bubbles
- 12- sculptor
- 13- floats
- 14- material

Read the text and answer:

- 1- UK
- 2- artist
- 3- He was 19 years old.
- 4- Because he understands math well, and he also understands materials

S Order the words:

- 1- Why does Kapoor use stainless steel?
- 2- Kapoor has made many famous sculptures.
- 3- Stainless steel is very shiny.
- 4- This sculpture is about 13 meters tall.
- 5- Where Is Anish Kapoor from?
- 6- The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern.
- 7- Kapoor is a great artist.
- 8- Where did Kapoor study art?

Lesson (5)

U Supply the missing parts:

- (1) talented
- (2) surprised
- (3) problem
- (4) practicing

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- musician
 - 2- award

- 4- stage 7- actors
- 5- talented 8- performing
- 6- theater
- 9- instruments
- 10- musician

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- before
 - 2- on
 - 3- under 6- after
- 4- on 7- through
- 5- in
- 8- behind 9- in
- 10- for
- 11- for
 - 12- into

4 Order the words:

- 1- Sayed Darwish was a famous Egyptian musician.
- 2- What do you do on a sunny day?
- 3- What does Mazen hope to do one day?
- 4- The concert was amazing!
- 5- What is Mazen doing?
- 6- I put my guitar somewhere.
- 7- I'm always tired after a concert!
- 8- I couldn't find my guitar!
- 9- There is going to be a concert next
- 10- My friend saw the guitar behind the door.

S Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"What do I always do after school?" When I come home from school, the first thing I do is have lunch. I love having some tea after lunch. After that, I usually do my homework. It can be a little boring, but I know it's important. Once I finish my homework, I like to play outside with my friends. We ride bikes, play football, or just run around. It's so much fun. In the evening, I have dinner with my family, then I go to bed at 9:30.

(Lesson (6)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) pottery
- (2) clay
- (3) bowl
- (4) decorated

Supply the missing parts:

- (1) project
- (2) teacher
- (3) wheel
- (4) mom

3 Order the words:

- 1- I wanted to make a bowl.
- 2- We put on our aprons over clothes.
- 3-The kiln makes the clay hard and strong.
- 4- We waited for the bowl to be cool.
- 5-I used special paint to decorate my bowl.
- 6- I really enjoyed making my bowl!
- 7- The children chose what to make.
- 8- Amal made circles on her bowl.

Read the text and answer:

- 1- pottery 2- bowl 3- He showed them how to use a pottery wheel.
- 4- It's a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"A creative project I have done at school"
When my teacher told us that we were
going to do a creative project, I was so
excited! He told us that we were going to
do a pottery project. When we put on our
aprons and went to the pottery wheel, I
was so excited! I had never used a pottery
wheel before, and I couldn't wait to make a
vase. I put a lump of clay on the pottery
wheel. I used my hands to shape the clay
into a vase. It was hard work, but it was
also really fun. When I finished, I took my
vase to the kiln. The kiln makes the clay
hard and strong. When I got my vase back,
I was so proud of it!

(Lesson (7)

Supply the missing parts:

- (1) show
- (2) website
- (3) photography
- (4) edit

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- advertisement 2- choir 3- costumes
- 4- edit 5- exhibition 6- Photography
- 7- play 8- audience

Read the text and answer:

- 1- edit
- 2- website
- 3- They went to a photography exhibition.
- 4- He bought some photography books.

Order the words:

- 1- What was Magdy's job at the show?
- 2- I'm going to play the piano.
- 3- The choir is going to sing beautiful songs.

- 4- I've written a funny play!
- 5- I can't play an instrument.
- 6- Dad has a good camera.
- 7-Are you studying photography at school?
- 8- I don't like being on stage.
- 9- I can edit the photos for our school website.
- 10- I don't like singing or acting.
- 11- You're going to be a great photographer.
- 12- Magdy borrowed his dad's camera

Write an email:

From ayman@school.net

Io: ramez@yahoo.com

Subject: My favorite hobbies

Dear Ramez,

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about my favorite hobbies.

My favorite hobby is playing football. I play football every day after school, from 3:00 to 4:00 PM. I love playing soccer because It's a fun and active sport. I also love being on a team and working together with my teammates to win.

My other favorite hobby is reading. I read every night before bed. I love reading because it takes me to different worlds and introduces me to new characters. I also love learning new things from the books I read.

I also like to play video games, but I only play them on weekends. I'm starting to get interested in other hobbies, like photography and playing handball. What are your favorite hobbies? Talk to you soon,

Ayman

- Unit (1) Touts(1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- exhibition
- 2- modeling
- 3- cloth
- 4- jewelry

2 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- Anish Kapoor is a sculptor.
- 2- It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum Bilbao, Spain.

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- competition
- 2- creative
- 3- painting
- 4- modeling





- 1- hospitals 2- computers
- 3- Factories use computers in robots that can do dirty and dangerous work.
- 4- Secretaries use them in offices to write letters.

Choose the correct answer:

2- find 1- computer 3- use 5- beads 4- hear 6- takes

Order the words:

- 1- Do you like getting your hands messy?
- 2- Stainless steel is good for outdoor sculptures.

Write a paragraph of (60) words: "My school day"

I get up early in the morning, then I wash and have breakfast. After that, I take the bus to school. At school, I study different subjects, like math, science, English, and history. I also have a break and lunch with my friends. In the afternoon, I go to the library to read books or do my homework. Then I take the bus home. Hove my school day! I learn new things, make new friends, and have fun.

Lesson (1)

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) computer
- (2) game
- (3) cartoons
- (4) swapping

Supply the missing parts:

- (1) apartment
- (2) comfortable
- (3) share
- (4) noise

Read and complete the text:

- (1) violin
- (2) practice
- (3) sporty
- (4) push-ups

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- watch cartoons 2- swap comic books
- 3- play the violin 4- do push-ups
- 5- play chess 6- sporty
 - 7- board
- 8- violin 9- comic books 12- chess 11- push-ups
- 10- cartoons 13- watch

- 14- does
- 15- swap
- 16- plays

S Order the words:

- 1- We moved into a new apartment.
- 2- Sherif is an amazing chess player.
- 3- Maged and I have many of the same
- 4- What do you like about your bedroom?
- 5- We watch cartoons with our friends.
- 6- I love swapping comic books.
- 7- My brother does push-ups in our room.
- 8- Chess is quite difficult for me.
- 9- Maged and I like board games.
- 10- What do you do in your bedroom?

Write an email:

From: gameeia@yahoo.com

To: merna@gmail.com

Subject: Our new apartment and my new

Dear Merna.

Guess what? We moved into a new apartment! I'm so excited, especially because I have a new bedroom. It's bigger than my old one, and it has a big window with a view of the park. I can't wait to spend all my time there playing and

I'm still getting used to the new place, but I'm really happy. My new neighborhood is great, and I've already made a few new friends. I can't walt to show you my new bedroom sometime soon.

How are things going with you? What's newf

See you soon, Gameela

Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) appliance
- (2) make
- (3) making
- (4) blade

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- smoothie
 - 2- milkshakes
- 3- blender 4- won't

Read and complete the text:

1- heat 2- medicine 3- vaccine 4- won't

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- milkshake
 - 2- motor
- 3- invention 6- vaccine

- 7- invention
- 4- smoothie 5- appliance 8- blade
 - - 9- motor

- 10- heat
- 11- vaccine
- 12- appliance

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- gets 2- will be 3- come
4- put 5- may 6- make
7- won't 8- arrive 9- may
10- if 11- have 12- use 13- is
14- wants 15- doesn't go 16- won't come

Read thrite " do ower

- 1- Polish American 2 bottom
- 3- To turn the blade.
- 4- There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, tool

Order the words

- 1-Which is your favorite kitchen appliance?
- 2- Blenders are useful in medicine.
- 3- Has the blender changed over the years?
- 4- Dr Jonas was a famous scientist.
- 5- What do you use the blender for?
- 6- Some blenders can heat food!
- 7- Do you have a blender at home?
- 8- Dr Jonas used a blender to make a vaccine.

(1: /)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) opinion
- (2) games
- (3) think
- (4) electricity

2 Supply the missing parts:

1- outage 2- interactive 3- cable 4- power

Read and complete the text:

1- lighting 2- transportation
3- electric 4- stations

Choose the correct answer:

1- opinion 2- think 3- lights
4- electricity 5- electric 6- power
7- transportation 8- socket
9- interactive 10- kettle

6 Order the words:

- 1- Why is electricity important?
- 2- I play video games with my brother.
- 3- What did Miss Amira do?
- 4- What is a power outage?
- 5- We need lights in the evening.
- 6- What things can't we do without electricity?
- 7- Some people have electric cars.
- 8- Bus stations and airports need electricity.

6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"How is electricity important?"

I think that electricity is very important. It helps us use electric appliances to cook our favorite foods and make drinks. I love that I can use my computer to learn new things, play games and watch videos. Electricity is also important for transportation. Bus stations and airports need electricity to give buses and airplanes power. This means that electricity helps people travel to new places. I'm so glad that we have electricity. It makes my life so much easier and more fun

- Read and complete the text:
- (1) Humans (2) chores (3) terrible (4) broke

2 Supply the missing parts:

1- robots 2- chores 3- ironing 4- fixing

Read and complete the text:

1- ironing 2- making 3- fixing 4- shocked

Choose the correct answer:

1- Luckily 2- programmed 3- make 4- fix 5- microwave 6- fill

7- milkshake 8- Iron 9- change 10- heat

S Order the words:

- 1- What does a Bill do?
- 2- The Bills were important to the people.
- 3- All the Bills suddenly broke down.
- 4- Life on Earth is sweet!
- 5- The Bill robots do all the chores.
- 6- I programmed Bill to fix my car.
- 7- What am I going to do?
- 8- Mom learned how to use the microwave.

Write an email:

From: omnia@school net

To: hagar@yahoo com

Subject: An interesting story I read Hi Hagar

How are things with you? I hope you're fine.

I have read a story called "The Day The Bills Broke Down", and I want to tell you about it. The robots, called Bills, were



helping people with all their chores. One day, they broke down, and people were very shocked. People started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave so they could heat some food. Luckily, a computer engineer fixed the problem, and all the Bills started working again.

Omnia

Lesson (5)

Supply the missing parts:

(1) away (2) pick (3) hang (4) tidy

Choose the correct answer:

1- water 2- clothes 3- books 4- kitchen 5- room 6- garbage 7- dishes

Choose the correct answer:

1- up 2- up 3- away 4- up 5- out 6- up 7- up 8- hang 9- pick 10- clean 11- put 12- tidy 13- mop 14- put

Order the words:

- 1- We need to clean up the kitchen.
- 2- We have to put out the garbage.
- 3- Our dining table is really messy.
- 4- The kitchen floor is dirty.
- 5- The garbage can is full.
- 6- There are toys on the floor.
- 7- I'll put out the garbage.
- 8- I always tidy up my room on weekends.
- 9- Can you put away the dishes?
- 10- There is juice on the floor.

S Write an email:

From: marwa@gmail.com
To: salma@yahoo.com

Subject: The chores we do on the

weekend Hi Salma

I hope this email finds you well! I wanted to tell you about the chores my family and I do every weekend.

First, we mop up the water. Sometimes, when we take a bath or wash dishes, water spills on the floor. So, we use a mop to clean it up. Next, we hang up the clothes. My mom washes our clothes in the washing machine, and then we hang them outside to dry. Then we hang them in the

closet. After that, we clean up the kitchen. We wash the dishes and put them away. Then, we tidy up our rooms. We also have to put but the parbage. My dad takes out the trash page and help him carry them to the bins outside.

I would love to hear about the chores you and your family do too!

Take care and have a tantastic week! Marwa

Lesson (6)

Tead and complete the text:

(1) Turtles (2) space (3) dig (4) lamp

Supply the missing parts:

1- attention 2- sharpen
3- vet 4- vaccinations

Read and complete the text:

1- This 2- sharpen
3- collar 4- vaccinations

Choose the correct answer:

1- This is
2- This means that
3- This means that
5- This is
6- This means that

G Order the words:

- 1- Where do turtles sleep?
- 2- What equipment does a cat need?
- 3- Cats should go to the yet every year.
- 4- Cats like a warm, comfortable bed.
- 5- A cat needs a scratch post
- 6- Cats like to play with toys.
- 7- How often should cats go to the vet?
- 8- Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
- 9- What do turtles eat?
- 10- What equipment do turtles need?

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"Caring for your turtles"

Turtles are super cool! I learned that they eat flowers and plants, so if you have a pet turtle, you need to make sure they have a lot of space to move around and explore. They also need clean soil to dig in. Turtles sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm. When it's time to sleep, they like to find a safe and quiet place. Taking care of a turtle sounds like a big responsibility, but I think it would be so much fun!



(7)

Read and complete the text:

(1) vacation

(2) bricks

(3) hole

(4) curious

Choose the correct answer:

2- brick 1- curious

3- shocked

4- great-grandmother

5- spare

6- bricks 7- curious

8- shocked

9- spare

10- memories

11- grow up

12- childhood

G Order the words:

1- What is the story of the message?

2- Sameh felt very curious.

3- The doll was beautiful.

4- Do you think they were happy?

5- There was a birthday card.

6- Sameh found a message in the wall.

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"The history of your family home"

My family home has a really interesting history! It's super old - even older than my grandparents. I'm not exactly sure how old it is, but I think it's been around for many, many years. Lots of different people have lived in our home before us. My granddad told me that it used to belong to his grandparents. Over time, our home has changed a lot. My parents have added new rooms and painted the walls in fun colors. We also have modern appliances now, like a nice oven and a big TV. It's really cool to think about all the memories and stories that have happened in our family home throughout the years. Hove living here and being a part of its history!

Unit (2) Test (2)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- apartment

2- week

3- bedroom

4- swapping

Listen and answer the questions:

1- He invented the blender.

2- He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Supply the missing parts:

1- lighting

2- appliances

3- electricity

4- electric

d Read the text and answer:

(A) 1- mother

2- 100 years

(B) 3- It's the electric light bulb.

4- stupid - switch on

Choose the correct answer:

1- gets

2- Vaccine

3- out

4- violin

5- that

6- may catch

Order the words:

1- The robots broke down yesterday

2- Could you mop up the juice, please?

Write an email:

From: jana@hotrnau zom

To. ola@gmail.com

Subject: What I have seen at the pet shop Hi Ola-

You won't believe what I saw at the pet shop today! They had so many cute pets! The seller told me some cool things about taking care of pets. He said that pets need love, food, and a safe home. For dogs, they need walks and playtime. Cats need scratching posts. And for fish, they need a clean tank and the right food. I'm excited about getting a pet someday! Take care,

Jana



Read and complete the text:

(1) tents

(2) nomadic

(3) sleds

(4) reindeer

Supply the missing parts:

1- roofs

2- What

3- environment

4- nature

Read and complete the text:

1- nomadic

2- subjects

3- skills

4- timetable

Read and complete the text:

1- roofs

2- Green

3- nature

4- environment

S Choose the correct answer:

1- mobile

2- flexible 3- timetable

4- boarding 5- subject

6- subjects

7- flexible

10- sleds

8 mobile 9 boarding



Read the text and answer:

- 2- shade 1- amazing
- 3- In 2017, classes at one school in Egypt started a new project. They wanted to go to their green roofs for lessons.
- 4- Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy - and that is great for learning

7 Order the words:

- 1- What is a green roof?
- 2- What are nomadic people?
- 3- Would you like to visit Siberia?
- 4- Green roofs are great for the environment.
- 5- What is a nomadic school?
- 6- How do the children get an education?
- 7- Nomadic people don't live in one place.
- 8- Nomadic people look after reindeer.
- 9- Why are the children happy at the nomadic school?
- 10- How can roof gardens help students in city schools?

PRISOT 16

Read and complete the text:

- (1) uniform
- (2) neat
- (3) sometimes
- (4) cafeteria

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- neat
- 2- uniform
- 3- walk
- 4- cafeteria

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1-ICT
 - 2- neat 3- uniform
- 4- cafeteria 5- ICT
 - 6- neat
- 7- uniform
- 8- neat 9- cafeteria
- 10- grade
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- never
 - 2- always 3- sometimes
- 4- usually
- 5- often
- 6- go

- 7- starts
- 8- have
- 9- often walk
- 10- go 11- usually bring 12- cycles
- 13- sometimes brings 15- is sometimes
 - 14- often walks 16- are always

- 17- am never
- 18- often walks
- 19- always gets
- 20- does
- 21- sometimes visit 22- never walks

Order the words:

- 1- I'm in Grade 6.
- 2- How does Aban go to school?
- 3- I go to middle school.

- 4- How many days does Aban study every
- 5- We go to school from Sunday to Thursday.
- 6- I sometimes get the bus with my friends.
- 7- We have an hour for lunch.
- 8- I usually bring lunch from home.
- 9- How does Lilly go to school?
- 10- I tidy up my desk to keep it neat.

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"My school week"

My school day is too much fun! First, I wake up early and have breakfast with my family Then, I wear my school uniform and catch the school bus. At school, I have different classes like math, science, and art. Hove the break because I get to play with my friends and run around outside. After lunch, we have English class, and I have fun during it. Finally, the bell rings, and I go home, excited for another awesome day tomorrow!

son (3)

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- Tennis
- 2- makes
- 3- healthy
- 4- join

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- makes 2- me
 - - 3- Swimming
- 4- make 7- me
- 5- make 8- makes
- 6- Running 9- me
- 10- Watching

13- make

- 11- make 14- Eating
- 12- makes 15- Listening
- Read the text and answer:
- 1- Art Club
- 2- walk
- 3- They went last week.
- 4- Their photos were really different.

Order the words:

- 1- What are the children doing?
- 2- Children can shoot goals.
- 3- Art makes you relaxed and happy.
- 4- Tennis makes you healthy and happy!
- 5- Tennis is a great sport.
- 6- Swimming makes me healthy and
- 7- My friends make me happy.
- 8- Running makes me feel healthy.

68



Supply the missing parts:

1- City 2- harm

3- passionate 4- electricity

2 Read and complete the text:

1- Eco-playground 2- tra

3- grow 4- encourage

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- demonstration 2- encourage 3- Eco-playground 4- principal

5- passionate 6- environmentally

7- Open 8- passionate 9- trail

10- Recycling 11- encourage 12- grow

Order the words:

1- We sort the waste from our classrooms.

2- There is a nature trail around the playground.

3- There is a small car park.

4- What can visitors see in the Recycling Room?

5- Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden.

6- New students are welcome to join us.

7- Where does the school tour start?

8- Where is the nature trail?

S Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"Green buildings"

Green buildings are awesome! They're like nature's best friends. We can help by making more green spaces with growing flowers, fruits and vegetables. Walking or cycling instead of driving is a great way to help the environment. Green buildings are super cool because they're made with recycled materials that don't harm the Earth. They even have solar panels that use the sun's power to make electricity. Let's all work together to make our world greener with amazing green buildings!

1 Read and complete the text:

1- storm 2- crash 3- steep 4- broken

2 Supply the missing parts:

(1) collapsed (2) said (3) would (4) repaired

3 Read and complete the text:

1- journey 2- bridge 3- said 4- was

Choose the correct answer:

1- steep 2- a journey 3- repair 4- collapses 5- repair 6- journey

7- bridge 8- storm

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- listened 2- was 3- was/could 4- heard 5- had 6- walked 7- would 8- could 9- were/could 10- had 11- was 12- hadn't 13- worked 14- would 15- hadn't 16- was 17- visited 18- hadn't 19- was doing 20- would

6 Order the words:

1- When did the bridge collapse?

2- The storm lasted all night.

3- I've just listened to the radio.

4- The bus journey took two hours.

5- They said that the storm would stop soon.

6- Lina and her family walked to the river.

7- What are we going to do?

8. We're building a new bridge.

(toon (5)

Read and complete the text:

(1) In my opinion (2) First of all

(3) In addition (4) Finally (5) To sum up

2 Supply the missing parts:

1- opinion 2- First 3- Finally 4- sum

3 Read and complete the text:

1- opinion 2- First 3- addition 4- sum

Choose the correct answer:

1- opinion 2- First 3- addition

4- Finally 5- sum up

5 Order the words:

1- Are school trips important?

2- In addition, school trips are often interesting.

3- All children should learn Arabic at school.

4- School clubs are a good way to learn.

5- ICT is the most useful subject.

6- We should learn about the environment at school.



Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"ICT is the most useful subject."

ICT is the best subject ever! Computers are so useful for everything. They help us with homework, school projects, and lessons. The internet is like a big library with all the information we need. It's like a world language we can understand. With ICT, we can explore and discover amazing things. We can learn new skills and even play games and make animations. ICT makes learning fun and helps us be super smart, It's the most useful subject in the whole world!

Read and complete the text:

- (1) scribe
- (2) court
- (3) palace
- (4) tablet

Read and complete the text:

- (1) bit
- (2) screamed
- (3) poisonous
- (4) shook

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- tablets
- 2- papyrus
- 3- scribe

- 4- court
- 5- herbs 6- script
- 7- tablets
- 8- screamed 10- palace
- 9- papyrus

Order the words:

- 1- How does Nebsin feel about his future job?
- 2- What does the doctor put on the bite?
- 3- Nebsin was writing on his wooden tablet.
- 4- What advice does the doctor give to Nebsin?
- 5- Why did you want to be a scribe?
- 6- What does the snake look like?
- 7- What does Nebsin think about his brother?
- 8- How did you learn to be a doctor?

fest (3

Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- green
- 2- gardens
- 3- air
- 4- great

2 Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- It makes you relaxed and happy.
- 2- You can draw and paint pictures in the art room.

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- nomadic
- 2- tents
- 3- boarding
- 4- mobile

Read the text and answer:

- 1- students
- 2- difficult
- 3- They are always noisy, active and childish.
- 4- A successful teacher should be patient, hardworking, friendly and helpful.

6 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- cafeteria
- 2-ICT
- 3- never

- 4- makes
- 5- principal
- 6- had

7 Order the words:

- 1- School trips are exciting learning experiences.
- 2. What do you use the computer for?

Write a paragraph of 60 words

"The school library"

The school library is such an important placel Reading is very important, and the library has so much information. I love finding books I like there. The librarian is very nice and helps me find good stories. The library is like a magical world full of books. I can borrow them and take them home. I go to the library often because I love reading and exploring new adventures. I can't wait to discover more amazing stories there!



Read and complete the text:

- (1) straight
- (2) braces
- (3) wheelchair
- (4) hearing aid

Read and complete the text:

- 1- different
- 2- sports
- 3- mean
- 4- glasses

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- straight
- 2- braces
- 3- wheelchair
- 4- hearing aid 5- glasses
- 6- mean

Read the text and answer:

- 1- glasses
- 2- drama
- 3- He is great at math.
- 4- Basketball.



Order the words:

- 1- How are we different to each other?
- 2- Asser is taller than everyone else in the class.
- 3- We should all help each other at school.
- 4- We are all equally important.
- 5- Our school is for everyone.
- 6- it's good that everyone is different.

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"The different people I know"
I know so many different people, and they are all special! I have friends who are funny and neighbors who are nice. My relatives are like a big family tree. Some people are tall, and others are short. They have different eye colors and hair styles. My friend Aya wears a hearing aid, and my friend Sara wears braces. My cousin, Shereif, uses a wheelchair because he can't walk well. They are all kind. Every person is important and brings something amazing to the world!

Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text:

- (1) asked
- (2) heard
- (3) couldn't
- (4) if

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- what happened
- 2- if we could
- 3- how we communicated
- 4- if I knew 7- asked
- 5- if we heard 6- we heard 8- had 9- asked 10- o
 - 10- could guess
- 11- how we were
- 12- if the boy would
- 13- why I wanted
- 14- they were
- 15- Monira was
- 16- if
- 17- the house was
- 18- why you were
- 19- you were
- 20- if I could

3 Order the words:

- 1- Can you all see the whiteboard?
- 2- How do you communicate at school?
- 3- Do you hear lots of sounds outside?
- 4- Can you guess what it is?
- 5- We had lots of ideas.
- 6- Do you know how to use sign language?

Lesson (3)

• Read and complete the text:

- (1) arm
- (2) plastic
- (3) cheap
- (4) disability

Supply the missing parts:

- 1- person / inventor
- 2- opinion
- 3- elbow
- 4- plans

3 Order the words:

- 1- What do you think about football?
- 2- In my opinion, he's very clever.
- 3- What about his plans for the future?
- 4- I think David's family is interesting.
- 5- What do you think about David?

Write an email:

From: amgad@hotmail.com

To: tomagmail com

Subject: My family and I

Hi Tom-

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you about me. I have an awesome family with a funny dad, a kind mom, and a cute little sister. My school is cool, and I have nice teachers. My favorite subject is art. I love playing football and drawing. On weekends, I go to the park' with my family. What about you? Tell me all about your family, school, and hobbies too!

Lesson (4)

• Read and complete the text:

- 1- rainforests
- 2- advertisement
- 3- information
- 4- kındness

2 Supply the missing parts:

- 1- advertisement
- 2- work
- 3- pictures

Amgad

4- information

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- III 2- illness 3- happiness 4- happy
- 5- agree 6- advertisement 7- kindness
- 8- information 9- posters 10- groups
- Order the words:
- 1- Can I work with you?
- 2- I'd like everyone to work together.
- 3- I'd love to draw the pictures!
- 4- These posters are beautiful.
- 5- Who are you working with in your group?
- 6- We will make a very good team!
- 7- Why does Fares talk to Mrs Randa?
- 8- Fares starts to feel a bit sad.
- 9- Let's go and talk to Amira.
- 10- Samer is good at design.

Lesson (5)

Read and complete the text:

1- herd 2- leader 3- kindest 4- route

2 Read and complete the text:

1- hunters 2- members 3- biggest 4 proudest

Choose the correct answer:

1- leader 2- herd 3- hunter 4- roar 5- route 6- Mice

Choose the correct answer:

1- coldest 2- most dangerous 3- happiest 4- best 5- worst

6- biggest 7- kindest

8- the most powerful 9- easiest

10- most beautiful 11- more expensive

12- the most difficult 13- best 14- proudest 15- faster than

16- most dangerous

6 Order the words:

1- The elephants liked to swim in the lake.

2- The elephants could get out!

3- Many of the elephants didn't see the mice.

4- Thank you for listening and respecting our needs.

5- How did the mice help the elephants?

1 Supply the missing parts:

1- hair 2- hobbies 3- photography 4- sports

2 Read and complete the text:

(1) profile (2) braces (3) games (4) mall

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- into 2- sports 3- keen 4- favorite 5- wait 6- tell 7- photography 8- profile

Order the words:

1- I play volleyball at my local club.

2- It's easy for me to get home.

3- What do you do on the weekend?

4- I think a lot about the future.

5- I'd like to be a dentist.

6- What are your hobbies?

7- I can't wait to hear from you!

8- What are your future plans?

Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"My personal profile"

Hi! My name is Ahmed, and I'm 12 years old. I live in a beautiful house with my dad, mom, and little brother. I have short brown hair and wide eyes. I love playing football and drawing pictures of animals. My best friend is Ali, and we have so much fun together. We like going to the park and playing video games together. I'm a friendly and happy person, and I enjoy spending time with my family and friends.

(te to (7))

Read and complete the text:

(1) brain (2) walker (3) decorated (4) exercise

Order the words:

1- How does Hana save the day?

2- Hana receives a new walker every year.

3- Hana's favorite color is green.

4- What is special about Hana?

5- Hana is a very helpful girl.

6- I think we should go to the park.

7- How old is your little boy?

8- Why is the woman worried?

9- The little boy was in danger.

10- I can't see my little boyl

Unit (4) Test (4)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- six 2 green 3- braces 4- walk

2 Listen and answer the questions:

1- It's made of special bricks with plastic.

2- He wrote an educational comic about him. He portrayed David as a superhero who fights against bullying

3 Read and complete the text:

1- photography 2- countryside 3- sports 4- movies

Read the text and answer:

(A) 1- a vase 2- street

(B) 3- They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows.

4- He was at home having his lunch. After a while, he closed his eyes and fell asleep.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- hunter 2- hand 3- advertisement

4- the coldest 5- hearing aid 6- if

Order the words:

1- Elephants roared very loudly in the

2- What can people do with a walker?

Write an email:

From: mona@school com To: hana@gmail.com

Subject: A story I read in the library

Hi Hana.

I hope you're doing well! Guess what? Last week. I read the coolest story at the library. It was about a brave girl who went on an adventure to find a magical treasure. She had to solve puzzles and face scary monsters. It was so exciting! I couldn't put the book down. The ending was surprising too. I think you would love it! Let's go to the library together and find more amazing stories.

Take care. Mona



Revision calinic

Read and complete the text:

1- happy 2- paints 3- relaxing

4- messy 5- clay

Read and complete the text:

1- art 2- sculpture 3- bubbles 4- irregular

Read and complete the text:

2- Stainless steel 1- strong 4- reflects 3- outdoor

Read and complete the text:

2- choir 1-play 3- photography 4- costume

S Read and complete the text:

1- clav 2- wheel 4- kiln 3- apron

6 Read and complete the text:

1- shells 2- iewelry 3- bottles 4- sculptures

Answer Key

Supply the missing parts:

1- sculptor 2- Where 3- stainless steel 4- outdoor

8 Supply the missing parts:

2 clav 1- pottery 3- bowl 4 Dentit

Supply the missing parts:

1- club 2- animations 3- pictures 4- story

Order the words:

1- I used colored beads to make jewelry.

2- How do you like to express yourself?

3- What can you make with a cardboard

4- His favorite activity is making pottery.

5- A verse is a part of the poem.

6- There is a concert next week.

7-Mazen writes his own songs.

8- I'm going to make costumes for the

9- He can't play any musical instrument.

10- The choir is going to sing beautiful

11- Malak plays the guitar really well.

12- Nadine loves performing on stage.

13- A kiln is a hot oven for making pottery

14- Do you like being a photographer?

15- How about designing your own clothes?

16- It's uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

Choose the correct answer:

2- shells 3- beads 1- pottery 4- animation 5- junk modeling 6- mix 7- feel 8- musician 9- apron 10- editing 11- Costumes 12- concert 13- material 14- bubble 15- sunny 18- clean 16- reflects 17- poet 19- kiln . 20- choir

Choose the correct answer:

1- wear 2- stay 3- is 4- finish 5- doesn't 6- feels 7- meets 8- walk 9- USA

11- can 10- do



1- on 2- before 3- behind 4- after 5-through 6- on 7- after 8- in 9- for 10- Into

Write an email:

From: sohaila@gmail.com
To: nadme.a.school.com
Subject: My school concert

Hi Nadine,

I couldn't wait to tell you about our school concert! It was incredible! I performed on the piano, my favorite musical instrument. I played beautiful music, and everyone loved it. I've been practicing my piano skills a lot, and I'm getting more confident. I can't wait for you to come over and hear me play. We can even play the piano together! See you soon,

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- competitions

2- five and fifteen

3- museum

4- send

Listen and answer the questions:

1- It was yesterday.

2- They ate, drank and played games.

Read and complete the text:

1- express 2- activities 3- technology 4- animation

Read the text and answer:

1- enjoyable 2- English

3- It's spoken in different countries.

4- You will forget it.

Choose the correct answer:

1- bright 2- don't 3- watch 4- decorate 5- play 6- after

Order the words:

1- There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition.

2- You can use beads to make jewelry.

8 Write an email:

From: mona@gmail.com
To: jana@gmail com
Subject: The play I watched

Hi Jana,

I need to tell you about the play I watched at the theater! It was so cool! The

characters were funny and talented. The stage decorations were incredible, with colorful and bright colors. The costumes were amazing, too. I loved it because the story was full of adventures and made me laugh a lot. You should come with me next time!

Talk to you soon,

Mona

Revision on Unit

1- apartment 2- light 3- PC 4- cartoons

Read and complete the text:

1- blade 2- chops 3- motor 4- milkshakes

Read and complete the text:

1- outage 2- whiteboard 3- cable 4- electricity

Read and complete the text:

1- broke 2- blender 3- microwave 4- fix

S Read and complete the text:

1- hang up 2- put out 3- tidy up 4- put away

6 Read and complete the text:

1- attention 2- stroke 3- chin 4- couch

Read and complete the text:

1- vacation 2- spare 3- memories 4- house

Read and complete the text:

1- party 2- presents 3- food 4- decorations 5- living room 6- house

Supply the missing parts:

1- put away 2- clean up 3- put out 3- pick up 4- hang up 6- mop up

10 Supply the missing parts:

1- look 2- from 3- metal 4- tidy up

Supply the missing parts:

1- florists 2- sunny 3- food 4- water



Order the words:

- 1- Seleem shares his room with his brother Maged.
- 2- I sometimes play the plano in my room.
- 3- Noha likes swapping comic books.
- 4- Kareem watches cartoons on TV.
- 5- Can you play the violin?
- 6- What is the blender made of?
- 7- A vaccine protects people from illness.
- 8- Omar is cleaning up the kitchen.
- 9- Your bedroom is very messy.
- 10- Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
- 11- Cats have a lot of soft hair.
- 12- We had a power outage vesterday.
- 13- What do you use your blendar for?
- 14- How should I clean my indoor plant?
- 15- Do you live in an apartment?

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- bedroom 2- swapping
- 3- watch cartoons 4- chess 5- sporty
- 6- chat 7- milkshake 8- vaccine
- 10- power 11- interactive 9- motor
- 12- microwave 13- change 14- tidy up
- 15- clothes 16- mop 17- brick
- 20- Turtles 18- bicycle 19- claws

(E) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- This is 2- This means that
- 3- This is 4- have 5- up
- 6- boils 7- away 8- go
- 9- up 10- will 11- out
- 12- may 13- won't get 14- to
- 15- make 16- if 17- come
- 19- get 20- eats 18- away
- 21- doesn't come 22- won't feel

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"Chores you help with at home"

I'm proud to help with different chores in the house! In the kitchen, I assist in preparing meals, washing dishes, and putting them away. In my room, I tidy up my toys and make my bed. I put out the garbage. I also help with washing clothes and then hanging them up. And when the floor has water on it, I mop it up. I enjoy being a helpful member of my family!

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- flowers 2- food 3- warm 4- dark

Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- They visited their grandparent's old house with their parents.
- 2- in a small hole in the wall.

Read and complete the text:

- 1- bricks 2- rooms
- 3- many 4 memorres

Read the text and answer:

- (A) 1- cats 2- quarter
- (B) 3- She was cooking two chickens for lunch.
- 4- She was interested in having cats at home.

6 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- spare room 2- vet 3- clean up
- 4- will 5- have 6- may

7 Order the words:

- 1- I use the microwave for heating food.
- 2- Can you put away the dishes, please?

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"Caring for your cats"

Taking care of my cats is so much fun! I make sure they eat their meals and always have fresh water to drink. I take them to the vet for check-ups and vaccinations to keep them healthy. I give them comfortable beds and provide scratching posts and toys to help them feel at home. They love to sleep and play, so I make sure they have plenty of rest and exercise. Caring for my furry friends brings me so much joy!

Revision entinis

Read and complete the text:

- 1- subjects 2- flexible
- 3- reindeer 4- boarding

Read and complete the text:

- 1- floods 2- panels
- 4- subjects 3-ICT

Read and complete the text:

1- music 2- instruments 3- drama 4- costumes

Read and complete the text:

- 1- cooking 2- recipe
- 3- swimming 4- competitions

S Read and complete the text:

1- scribe 2- palace 3- busy 4- scripts

Supply the missing parts:

1- First 2- opinion 3- history 4- Sum

Order the words:

- 1- Why are green roofs good for the environment?
- 2- Nomadic children help to look after reindeer.
- 3- Some children go away to boarding school.
- 4- Classrooms are not the same in every
- 5- I wear my school uniform every school
- 6- My brother's bedroom is sometimes messy.
- 7- Fares often goes swimming with his friends.
- 8- Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.
- 9- Cooking club always makes me hungryl
- 10- Sad plays make me unhappy!
- 11- Where do they eat lunch?
- 12- What is special about Green City School?
- 13- How long does it take to get to school?
- 14- There was a new metal bridge.
- 15- Students should do sports in schools every day.
- 16- Playing sports keeps you healthy.

8 Choose the correct answer:

1- city 2- calm

3- be away from their families 4- subject

5- reindeer 6- green roof 7- music 8- sled 9- panels 10- encourage

11- frames 12- steep 13- collapsed 14- opinion

O Choose the correct answer:

1- always 2- lives 3- is always

4- never 5- go 6- usually has 7- meet 8- always eats 9- doesn't

10- sometimes walk 11- often go

12- make 13- Listening 14- me

15- makes 16- Swimming 17- me

18- makes 19- didn't 20- had collapsed

21- had heard 22- was 23- said 24- had seen 25- were building Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"Going to school clubs is fun"

There are a lot of school clubs. Going to school clubs is fun. We go to the music club to sing and play musical instruments. We also go to the cooking club to make a meal. Food is always delicious! We can go to the swimming club. It makes us healthy and strong. If we go to the drama club, we can act in plays there.

Listen and circle the correct answer:

(1) Sunday (2) home (3) 3 pm (4) ICT

Listen and answer the questions:

- 1- I will have a healthy body and new friends
- 2- They go to the club every weekend.

Read and complete the text:

1- History 2- cultures 3- learn 4 changed

Read the text and answer:

2- healthy

3- Mustafa plays football in a sports club.

4- Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up.

Choose the correct answer:

1- court 2- repaired 3- uniform 4- said 5- plays 6- makes

Order the words:

1- The boy tried to push the snake away.

2- We never go to school on Fridays.

🚯 Write an email:

Hi Ahmed .

From: mazen@hotmail.com

To: ahmed@omail.com Subject: School Open Day

How are you and your family?

Last Monday, we had our School Open Day. The school invited the new students and their families. They had a tour of the school buildings. They saw our new Green Library. They also saw the nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.

They saw our small car park! It was a nice day.

See you soon-

Mazen

Revision on Unit

1- built 2- movable 3- comic 4- disabilities

Read and complete the text:

1- problems 2- hearing 3- video 4- wear

Read and complete the text:

1- advertisement 2- bakery 3- website 4- information

Supply the missing parts:

1- shopping 2- birthday
3- present 4- opinion

Order the words:

1- People shouldn't be unkind to someone.

2- Shady is tall and wears glasses.

3- Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight.

4- What sounds do you hear every day?

5- Where do people learn finger spelling?

6- What do you think about computer games?

7- I think cartoons are funny.

8- What do you think about playing football?

9- What do you look like?

10- I love listening to music.

Choose the correct answer:

1- mean 2- wheelchair 3- glasses
4- hearing aid 5- braces 6- curly
7- expensive 8- kindness 9- kind
10- into 11- walker 12- decorated

13- crawls 14- saves 15- into

Thoose the correct answer:

1- advertisement 2- information 3- Kindness 4- if I knew 5- asked

6- if she knew 7- why I wanted

8- if I thought 9- had 10- what I knew 11- if she could 12- if Tarek liked

13- asked 14- if they knew 15- if I could

16- most powerful 17- most famous

18- most intelligent 19- tallest

20- smallest 21- most dangerous 22- highest 23- fastest 24- calmest

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"How to help people with disabilities"
We should help people with disabilities.
We should also look after them. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. We must show kindness to them. Kindness is important. Some people have problems hearing. We can communicate with them in sign language. Some people cannot walk. We can help them move their wheelchairs. We should all help each other. We are all equally important and special.

Unit (4) Test (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

(1) different (2) short (3) curly (4) Everyone

Listen and answer the questions:

1- Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other.

2- Adam said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

3 Supply the missing parts:

1- walker 2- glasses 3- braces 4- different

Read the text and answer:

1- kind 2- kindness

3- We must make sure that our behavior and actions do not harm others.

4- Your kindness.

Choose the correct answer:

1- leader 2- more 3- dentist 4- mall 5- where 6- the best

Order the words:

1- The tiger is faster than the elephant.

2- Braces help your teeth grow correctly.

8 Write an email:

From: alaa@gmail.net
To: ramy@hotmail.com

Subject: How we are different

Hi Ramy,

I hope this email finds you well. I have a lot

of friends at school. Waleed is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Aya is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amany loves drama and has curly, dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Khaled is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Fawzy is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces. I have great friends. We are all different, but we love each other.

Tell me about your school friends.

Talk to you soon,

Alaa



Revision Test (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- sculptor 2- India
3- stainless steel 4- strong

Listen and answer the questions:

1- Because our families are different.

2- No, they shouldn't.

Read and complete the text:

1- blender 2- appliance 3- smoothle 4- invented

Read the text and answer:

1- very tall building 2- English

3- They came from different countries all over the world.

4- She tidies her room and makes her bed. She often polishes her shoes, then she washes and puts on my school uniform, and she gets her books ready to begin a school day. She rides her bicycle to school.

Choose the correct answer:

1- clean 2- jewels 3- out 4- starts 5- herd 6- opinion

Order the words:

1- All children should learn Arabic at school.

2- What does the snake look like?

Write a paragraph of (60) words: "My favorite musical instrument"

My favorite musical instrument is the gultar. I love the way it sounds, and I think it's a lot of fun to play. I love playing all kinds of music on the guitar. But my favorite thing to do is play at concerts. I've played in a few concerts at my school, and it's always a lot of fun to get up on stage and perform for people. I want to be able to play all of my favorite songs, and I want to be able to write my own music.

Revision Test (2)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Polish-American 2- bottom 3- motor 4- milkshakes

Listen and answer the questions:

1- A month ago.

2- Because she has a new bedroom.

3 Supply the missing parts:

1- sculptor 2- sculpture
3- steel 4- material

Read the text and answer:

1- stomach 2- friend

3- He's got a terrible pain in his stomach.

4- He saw a lot of sweets under his bed.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1- Photography 2- often walks 3- great 4- cafeteria 5- asked 6- for

Order the words:

1- What can you use to make a collage?

2- I always tidy up my room on weekends.

8 Write an email:

From: heba@gmail.net
To: asmaa@yahoo.com

Subject: The chores we do on the

weekend

Hi Asmaa

I hope this email finds you well! I wanted to tell you about the chores my family and I do every weekend.

First, we sweep the floor. Next, we hang up the clothes. My mom washes our clothes in the washing machine, and then

78

we hang them outside to dry. Then we hang them in the closet. After that, we clean up the kitchen. We wash the dishes and put them away. Then, we tidy up our rooms. We also have to put out the garbage.

I would love to hear about the chores you and your family do too!

See you soon, Heba

Revision Test (3)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

(1) safe

(2)15

(3) warm

(4) Water

Listen and answer the questions:

1- She thinks electricity is most useful in our free time.

2- She plays video games with her brother Adel.

Read and complete the text:

1- interactive

2- disappeared

3- cable

4- socket

Read the text and answer:

1- wise

2- living

3- It refers to the old man.

4- The young man.

Choose the correct answer:

1- sculptor

2- go

3- air

4- never

5- after

6- uniform

Order the words:

1- There is going to be a concert next week.

2- How often should cats go to the vet?

Write a paragraph of (60) words: "My favorite pet"

My favorite pet is my dog, Sparky. He is a small, brown dog with big ears and a furry tail. I love Sparky because he is always happy to see me, and he's my best friend. I chose a dog to be my pet because dogs are very loyal. I take care of Sparky by feeding him twice a day, walking him twice a day, and playing with him every day. I take it to the vet regularly. Sparky is the best pet a kid could ask for.

Revision Test (4)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- flowers

2- soil

3- warm

4- safe

Listen and answer the questions:

1- A Bill robot works 24 hours a day.

2- The Bill robots do all humans' chores.

Supply the missing parts:

1- appliance

2- blender

3- invented

4- metal

Read the text and answer:

1- novels

2- Fawzi

3- He found out that when his friend said he knew the writer of the novel.

4- I have learned not to tell lies.

Choose the correct answer:

1- sculptor 2- up 3- timetable

4- that

5- electric

6- won't

Order the words:

1- Cats should go to the vet every year.

2- How do you communicate at school?

Write an email:

From: sama@hotmail.com

To: rana@gmail.com

Subject: My favorite school subjects, my friends and what I hope to be in the future Hi Rana

How are things with you?

My favorite school subjects are math and science. I love learning about how things work and solving problems. I also like reading and writing, but not as much as math and science. I have a lot of great friends at school. We play together at break, and we help each other with our homework. When I grow up, I want to be a scientist. I want to invent new things and make the world a better place. I think science is really cool, and I can't wait to learn more about it.

Tell me, what are your favorite school subjects? What do you want to be when you grow up?

See you soon, Sama

Revision Test (5)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- garden

2- top

3- city

4- environment

Listen and answer the questions:

1- It makes you healthy and happy! 2- I can play tennis in the club.

Read and complete the text:

1- stroke

2- claws

3- vet

4- vaccinations

Read the text and answer:

1- football

2- Swimming

3- There are some dangerous sports, like motor racing and parachuting.

4- The players have to practice hard to win.

Choose the correct answer:

1- appliance

environment.

2- they were 3- hunter

4- the coldest 5- keen

6- if

Order the words:

1- Why does Kapoor use stainless steel? 2- Green roofs are great for the

Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"The robots"

In the future, I think robots will make our lives much easier. They will be able to do all of our chores, so we will have more time to do the things we love. For example, robots could clean our houses, cook our meals, and even walk our dogs. They could also help us with our homework and play games with us. I think it would be amazing to live in a world where robots do all the work for us.

Revision Test (6)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- exciting

2- visiting

3- education

4- year

Listen and answer the questions:

1- My favorite activity is painting.

2- I always feel happy when I'm painting.

Read and complete the text:

1- appliances

2- need

3- the dark

4- games

80

Read the text and answer:

1- three

2- easy

3- Basim saves money to buy new books, he also borrows some books from his friends.

4- He always tells them that reading makes them think better.

Choose the correct answer:

1- find

2- comic books

3- vaccine

4- often cycles

5- best

6- why you were

Order the words:

1- I'm going to play the piano.

2- How old is your little boy?

Write an email:

From: ali@yahoo.com

To: saad@gmail.com

Subject: My personal profile

Hi Saad.

I hope this email finds you well. I'm your new friend Khaled, and I'm 13 years old. I live in a beautiful house with my dad, mom, and little sister. I have short black hair and wide eyes. I'm tall, and I love playing basketball. My best friend is Shady, and we have so much fun together. We like going to the park and playing basketball together. I'm a friendly person, and I enjoy spending time with my family and friends. Write me back and tell me about your personal profile. Talk to you soon.

Ali